The expert, and famous, madam LOVYS BOURGEOIS
Midwife to the Qweene of France.

Sold by N: Brooke at the Angell in Cornhill. Ro: Vaughan sculp

The expert, and famous, madam LOVYS BOURGEOIS
Midwife to the Qweene of France.

Sold by N: Brooke at the Angell in Cornhill. Ro: Vaughan sculp

# THE Compleat Midwifes PRACTICE,

In the moſt weighty and high Concernments of the *Birth of Man.*

Containing Perfect Rules for *Midwifes* or *Nurſes*, as alſo for *Women* in their Conception, Bearing, and Nurſing of Children: from the experience not onely of our *Engliſh*, but alſo the moſt accompliſht and abſolute Practicers among the *French*, *Spaniſh*, *Italian*, and other Nations.

Work ſo plain, that the weakeſt capacity may eaſily attain the knowledge of the whole Art.

With Inſtructions of the *Midwife* to the Queen of *France* (given to her Daughter a little before her death) touching the practice of the ſaid Art.

Publiſhed with the approbation and good liking of ſundry the moſt knowing Profeſſors of *Midwifery* now living in the City of *London*, and other places.

*Illuſtrated with ſeverall Cuts in Braſs.*

Exod. 1. 17. But the *Midwifes* feared God. V. 20. *Therefore God dealt well with the Midwifes.*

By *T.C. I.D. M.S. T.B.* Practitioners.

*London*, Printed for *Nathaniel Brooke* at the Angell in *Cornhill*. 1656.

BRITISH
MUSEUM

# THE PREFACE OF

Sundry PRACTITIONERS in and about the City of *LONDON*, &c.

*Christian Reader.*

IT is high time, there being already published, many Treatises in this kind, for us to discharge our consciences for the good of the Nation, we have perused all that have been in this nature in *English*, and finde them strangely defficient, so crowded with unnecessary notions, and dangerous mistakes, that we thought it fit to give you warning of them, that for the future the unfortunate practisers, may prevent the *almost guilt*, of the crying sin of murder.

It is Admirable to us, that our Countrey should be so much deluded, to build all their practice upon such Authors that have not at all conduced to any considerable ad-

vantage in this ſo neceſſary uſeful Art as the preſerving of man-kind Alas! how many miſerable volume have theſe late times brought forth Not to diſparage any that have de ſerved, but in ſo weighty a concern- ment as this, we muſt ſtand upon our integrity, There hath been a reaſonable intention in the publi- ſhers of ſome books, *viz. The Birth of man*, the moſt antient, but very much unfurniſhed; as alſo the books of *child-birth*, *The expert Midwife*, the worſt that have been written in that kind, in French; and its almoſt a miracle to us that *Mr. Culpepper*, a man whom we otherwaies reſpect, ſhould deſcend ſo low, as to borrow his imperfect Treatiſe from thoſe wretched volumes, ſome of which are before mentioned, and we muſt deale faithfully with you, that, that ſmall peice of his, intituled, The direc- ctory for *Midwifes*, is the moſt deſpe- rately defficient of them all, except he writ it for neceſſity he could cer- tainely have never been ſo ſinfull to have expoſed it to the light.

Now Chriſtian Reader, to give thee

thee a true information of what we have here done for thy good, we shal not only Justifie from our own experiences, but fully demonstrate from the writings of the best practisers, both of the *French*, *Spanish*, and *Italians*, and other Nations; and we must cleerly confesse, that we are highly obliged to the incomparable labours of that most famous woman of the world, *Madam Loug Bourgeo*, late Midwife to the Queen of *France*, the praises that we read of all those that ever heard of her, are not so much a flourish as truth, for her reasons are solid experiences, and her witnesses have been all of the most eminent persons of *France*; and not only of her, but as we have already expresst of the most excellent known men or women of this Art of other Countries; it's upon thisaccount that we break the barriers, and boldly stand the brunt of all censures.

The chief occasion of this book, is to make it a great exemplary, and Schoole, where medicine married to the Midwives industrie, may teach every one the admirable effects of

the Divinity of this art of Midwifery.

And now knowing Reader that the Receipts herein contain'd, which have ever had happy ſucceſes, are not made publicke to the world on any other deſigne then or the aſſiſtance of ſuch perſons whom either the want of fortune or opportunity denieth ſuch ſudden helps, neither can we be without bleeding hearts, if we but conſider how many have been loſt by the unskilfulneſſe of thoſe that attempted this great work; nor ſhould we have proſtrated our reputation and private experiences, but to correct the frequent miſtake of moſt *Midwifes*, who reſting too bold upon the common way of delivering women, neglect all the wholeſome and profitable rules of Art, which might concern them in the occult diſeaſes of women, as alſo of the Anotomical parts of the Body. Thus having diſcharged our conſciences, we have no more to write, but referre you to the book it ſelf, deſireing a bleſſing of God on theſe our faithful endeavours, we are the hearty well wiſhers of your good,

*I. C. I. D. M. S. T. B.*

BRITISH MUSEUM

# The Contents.

Of the genitals or veſſels dedicated to generation in men or women, p. 1.

Of the veſſels of preparation, C. 1. p. 2.
Of the Paraſtatæ or veſſels where the blood is firſt changed. C. 2. p. 3.
The uſe of the preparing veſſels, C. 3. p. ib.
of the Teſticles in generall, c. 4. p. 4.
Of the Tunicles of the ſtones, c. 5. p. 5.
Of the ſuſpenſory muſcles, c. 6. p. 7.
Of the ſubſtance and temper of the ſtones, c. 7. p. 7.
Of the actions of the teſticles, c. 8. p. 9.
Of the Utilitie of the teſticles, and their parts, c. 9. p. 10.
of the veſſel that caſt forth the ſeed, c. 10. p. 11.
Of the Seminary bladders, c. 11. p. 13.
Of the Kernelly Proſtatæ, or foreſtanders, c. 12. p. 14.
of the ſtructure of the Yard, c. 13. p. 15.
of the ſeverall parts, conſtituting the Yard, c. 14. p. 17.
Of the action of the Yard, c. 15. p. 21.
Of the uſe of the Yard in general, c. 16. p. ibid.
Of the uſe of the parts conſtituting the yard c. 17. p. 22.

Sect.

## Sect. 2.

*Of the Genitals of women,* c. 1. p. 25.
*Of those parts called Mymphs and Clytoris,* c. 2. p. ib.
*Of the fleshly knobs, and the greater neck of the womb,* c. 4. p. 27.
*Of the Hymen,* c. 5. p. 28.
*Of the vessels that run through the neck of the womb,* c. 6. p. 29.
*Of the fabrick of the womb,* c. [illegible] p. 30.
*Of the preparing vessels in women,* p. 34.
*Of the stones in women,* p. 35.
*Of the different or ejaculatory,* c. 8. p. 37.
*Of the actions and uses of the Genitall parts in women,* c. 9. p. 28.
*Of the actions of the Clytoris,* c. 10 p. 39.
*of the action and use of the neck of the womb,* c. 11. p. ibid.
*Of the uses of the vessels running through the neck of the womb,* c. 12. p. 40.
*Of the actions of the womb,* c. 13. p. ib.
*Of the utilitie of the womb,* c. 14. p. 41.
*Of the utilitie of the preparing vessels in women,* c. 15. p. 42.
*Of the utilitie of the stones,* c. 16. p. 43.

## Sect. 3.

*Of the signs of conception,* c. 1. p. 44.

*Whether*

*Whether she hath conceived a Male*, c. 2. p. 46
*Whether a Female*, c. 3. p. 47.
*Of the conception of Twins*, c. 4. p. ibid.
*Of false conception*, c. 6. p. 48.
*How women with child ought to govern themselves*, c. 6. p. 54.
*How to govern themselves in the time of their going with child*, c. 7. p. 57. *&c.*

Sect. 4.

*Of the mixture of the seed of both Sexes, as also of its substance and form*, c. 1. p. 62.
*Of the three tunicles which the birth is wrapt in, in the womb*, c. 2. p. 64.
*Of the true generation of the parts, and the increase of them, according to the several daies and seasons*, c. 3. p. 65.
*Of the nourishment of the birth in the womb*, c. 4. p. 69.
*Of the condition of the Infant in the womb in the sixth, seventh, and eight moneth*, c. 5. p. 71,

Sect. 4.

*Of the situation of the child in the womb*, p. 72.

Sect. 5.

*Of Midwifes*, c. 1. p. 75.

*What*

*What ought to be observed when ſhee is neer the time of her lying down,* c. 2. p. 76.
*How to expell the Collick from women in child-bed,* c 3. p. 79.
*How the Midwife may know when the pains of travail do ſeize a woman,* c. 4. p. 80.
*Of the falling down of the waters, a good while before the woman travails,* c. 5. p. 81.
*What the Midwife ought to do in time of travaile,* c. 6. p. 82.
*How to draw forth the Secondines,* c. 7. p. 84.
*What may be given to a woman in travaile.* c. 8. p. 85.
*How to put the Womb again in its place.* c. 9. p. 86.
*Againſt the extreme loſſe of blood, which happen to women immediately after their delivery,* c. 10. p. ib.
*What is done to a woman preſently after her delivery,* c. 11. p. 88.
*Of women that have a great deal of bloud, and purge not neither in their travail nor after,* c. 12. p. 90. (p. 92.
*For thoſe who have but a little bloud,* c. 13.
*What is to be done to the Infant,* c. 14. p. ib.
*How to govern women in Child-bed,* c. 15. p. 93.
*Of the bathings that a woman is to uſe for the firſt eight dayes of her lying in,* c. 16. p. 95. *How*

*How a woman ought to govern her ſelf, in caſe ſhe be to be delivered of two children,* c. 17. p. 95.

*Of the danger that a woman hath to purge her ſelfe for the firſt dayes of her lying in.* c. 18. 97.

*Of the ſecond waſhing for women,* c. 19. p. 98.

*What is to be done to Infants as ſoon as they are born,* c. 20. p. 98.

*Of the laſt waſhing for Women,* c. 21. p. 101.

*Of an Aſtringent for Women when they ſhall have occaſion,* c. 22. p. ibid.

*To make ſearcloaths for women,* c. 23. p. 102.

*To cleanſe a woman before ſhe riſes,* c. 24. p. ibid.

*How a woman lying in of her firſt child, may avoid the gripings of her belly,* c. 25. 103.

*The Queen of France her Receit,* p. 104.

*Certain precepts hindering the delay and difficulty of bringing forth.* c. 26. p. 105.

*How the ſecondines are to be haſtened out.* c. 27. p. 108.

*Pills for the purpoſe,* p. 111.

*Of Caſes of Extremity; and firſt, what is to be done to a woman, who in her travail is accompanied with a flux of bloud, and with convulſions,* c. 28. p. 112.

*Of ordering the woman after ſhe is delivered,* c. 29. p. 129.

*What*

*What is to be done to the breast, Belly, and lower parts of the woman in child-bed,* p. 131.
*An Oyntment,* p. 132.
*An oynment to keep the milk from clotting,* p. 133.
*A Fomentation much commended,* ibid.
*Of the choise of a good Nurse,* p. 135.
*What is to be done in the extream parts of a child,* p. 136.
*What is to be done to such children as are troubled with flegme,* p. 137.
*What is to be done to children that have their Cods full of wind,* p. 138.
*How to take away the Canker out of the Infants mouth,* ibid.
*What is to be done to children whose intestines are fallen,* p. 139.
*To make an oyntment to strengthen the thighs and legs of a child and make him goe.* ibid.
*Of the relaxations of the Matrix, and the cause,* p. 140.
*of a disease that happens by reason of the fall of the Matrix.* p. 143.
*To remedie the fall of the fundament in Infants,* p. 144.
*of the Diseases of women, and first of the inflammation of the brest,* ibid.
*of windy Tumours in the breasts,* p. 1.

*of*

of the watry tumour in the breſts. p. 4.
of the kernell in the breaſt. p. 7.
of the Scirrhus of the breaſts. p. 9.
of the Canker in the breaſts, p. 12.
of the greatneſſe of the breaſts, p. 14.
of the defect, abundance, and coagulation of the Milk, p. 16.
of the Diſeaſes of the neck of the womb: and firſt of the diſeaſe called Tentigo. p. 17.
of the narrowneſſe of the neck of the womb: p. 19.
of wheales, condilomas of the womb, and of Hemorrhoids, p. 20.
of the Vlcers of the neek of the womb, p. 23.
of the womb being out of temper. p. 26.
of then arrowneſſe of the veſſels of the womb. p. 30.
of the puffing up of the womb. p. 31.
of the inflammation of the womb. p. 33.
of the Scirrhus of the womb. p. 36.
of the Dropſie of the womb, p. 38.
of the falling of the womb, p. 40.
of the aſcent of the Matrix, as alſo of the wounds and ulcers of the ſame. p. 42.
of the paine of the womb. p. 44.
of the ſuppreſſion of the flowers, p. 46.
of the dropping of the flowers and the difficulty of their comming down, p. 51.
of the diſcolouring of the flowers, p. 53.
of the inordinate flux of the Flowers, p. 54.

of

*of the over-abundance of the Courſes,* p. 56.
*of the whites & Gonorrhea in women,* p. 59.
*of the Green ſickneſſe,* p. 61.
*of the ſuffocation of the Matrix,* p. 62.
*of barrenneſſe,* p. 66.
*of bringing up of children, and their diſeaſes.*
*of the diſeaſes of the head,* p. 71.
*Bigneſſe and ſwelling of the head in little children,* p. 73.
*of the diſeaſes of the eyes, ears, and noſes in children,* p. 75.
*of certain ulcers in Childrens mouths,* p. 76.
*of certain other tumors called Paroulis, and Eſpoulis,* p. 77.
*of the two ſtrings under the tongue of a child,* p. 78.
*of the Coughing children,* ibid.
*of breeding teeth,* p. 79.
*of the inflammation of the Navel-ſtring in Infants,* p. 80.
*of the Worms,* ibid.
*of the convulſion in Infants,* p. 81.
*of the ſwelling of the Hypocondria in Infants,* p. 83.
*of Coſtiveneſſe in children,* ibid.
*of looſeneſſe in children,* p. 84.
*of Burſtneſſe in children,* ibid.
*of the inflammation of the Navel,* p. 86.

*of*

*of the jutting forth of the Navel,* p. ibid.
*of the ſtone in the bladder,* p. 87.
*of the not holding of the Urine,* ibid.
*of the Intertrigo,* p. 88.
*of Leanneſſe,* ibid.
*of the difficulty that children have to make water,* p. 89.
*of the inflammation of the Almonds of the eares,* p. 90.
*of vomiting,* ibid.
*of the Hicquet,* p. 91.
*of the pain of the belly in children,* ibid.
*of the ſmall pox in children,* p. 92.
Certain other inſtructions grounding upon practicall obſervations, fit to be known by all Midwives, and child-bearing women. *&c.* p. 95.
*A Second obſervation of a Woman that had been in Travail nine dayes,* p. 99.
*of a Woman here in Town that bare her Child eleven Moneths and could not be Delivered.* p. 101.
*of the common opinion, that a woman ſeven moneths gone, ought to walk very much; and of the accidents that happen thereby.* p. 103.
*of a child which they thought ſick of the Epilepſie, occaſioned by the ſickneſſe of the Mother, and of the cauſe.* p. 106.

*of a young woman who being ſtruck upon the belly by her Husband with his foot, was in great pain, & could not be brought to bed without the help of a Chirurgion.* p. 108.
*of two Deliveries of one Woman.* p. 109.
*of a Woman that becauſe ſhe would not be ruled in her Lying in, died.* p. 111.
*of certain Women that bear children and lye in before their time, and others at their full time, who grow big, and full of humors which cauſeth the death of the child preſently after their Delivery, their children being nouriſhed in their Bellies like fiſh, only with water.* p. 113.
*The obſervation of a woman who was thought unable to bear any more Children, yet contrary to expectation was delivered of one, and the reaſon thereof.* p. 114.
*A good obſervation in the choice of Nurſes,* p. 115.
*of a Woman which I laid two ſeveral times, and of the difference of her bearing of two children, proceeding from ſeveral cauſes,* p. 117.
*Inſtruction of a famous, and dying Midwife to her Daughter, touching the practice of this Art.* p. 119.

THE

BRITISH
MUSEUM

The natural forme of a child lying in y^e wom

To be sold by M^r Brooke at y^e Angel in Cornhil. G.F.

# THE COMPLEAT MIDWIFE HER PRACTICE.

## *Of the Genitals or veſſels dedicated to Generation in Men and Women.*

THe conſideration of theſe things is ſo neceſſary for the purpoſe of this book, that they require not onely a deep meditation, but the præeminence to take up the firſt thoughts of thoſe who would arrive to the knowledg of a thing ſo much needful to all mankinde. And it may be lawfully feared that many women do miſs their deſign becauſe they know nothing but the outſide of things; ſo that in matters of extremity, becauſe they are ignorant of the ſtructure of the parts, they cannot tell how to go about their work. We ſhall therefore begin with an eaſie Anatomy of the privy parts both of men and women, ſo far as ſhall be requiſite to the gaining of ſo great a skill.

In the firſt place therefore we ſhall begin with man, in whom thoſe things which are called the veſſels of preparation are firſt to be conſidered.

## CHAP. I.

### *Of the veſſel of preparation.*

AMong the Spermatic veſſels are to be conſidered firſt, two veins, and two arteries: theſe are carried downward from the ſmall guts to the Teſticles, and are much bigger in men then they are in women.

The original of theſe veines is not alwayes the ſame, for commonly the right vein riſeth out of the *hollow veine*, a little below the ſource or original of the Emulgent; but the leaſt takes his original from the lower part of the Emulgent it ſelf. Yet ſometimes it hath a branch carried to it from the trunk of the hollow vein.

The middle part of theſe veines runs directly through the Loyns, reſting upon the Lumbal Muſcle, a thin Membrane only intervening; and thus having gone about half its journey, it branches out and diſtributes it ſelf to the near adjoyning filmy parts of the body. The uttermoſt part of theſe veſſels is carried beyond the Midriff to the Stones, yet do they not paſs through the Peritonæum, but deſcends with a ſmall nerve and the muſcle called Cremaſter, through the Duplicity of the Midriffe; when it approaches neer the ſtones it is joyned with an artery; and now theſe veſſels which were before a little ſevered one from the other, are by a film riſing from the Peritoneum cloſed up, and bound both together, and ſo twiſting up like the young tendrils of a vine, they are carried to the end of the ſtones.

The arteries which are aſſociated to theſe veines take their original a little beneath the emulgent vein,

whence

BRITISH MUSEUM

fig: 1.

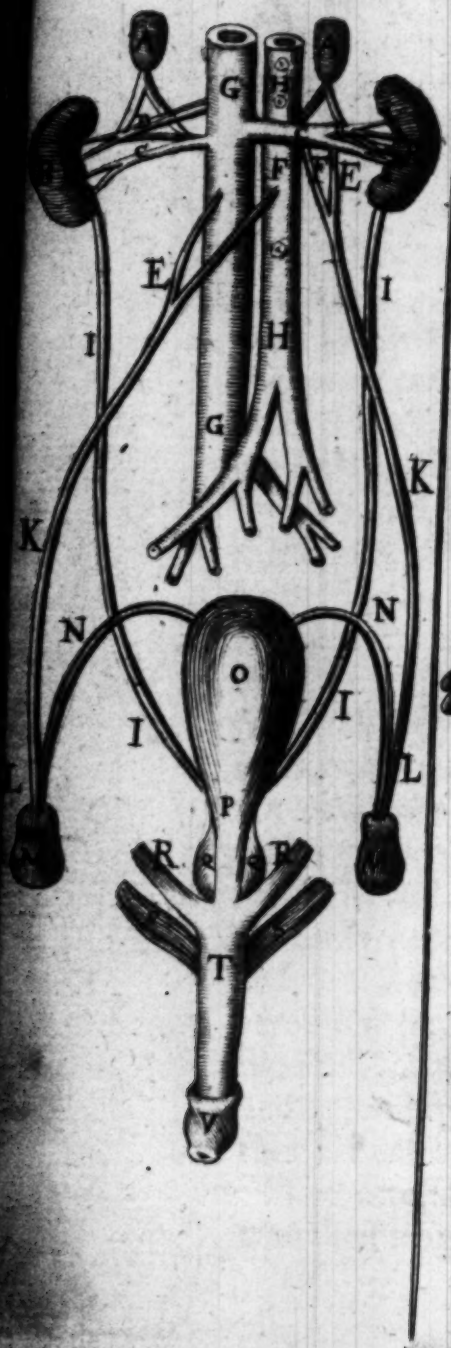



fig: 2.

## Explanation of the firſt figure.

AA. *The right and left kernel of the reins.*
B. *The true kidneys.*
CC. *The Emulgent veines.*
DD. *The Emulgent Arteries.*
EE. *The ſpermatic veines.*
FF. *The ſpermatic arteries.*
GG. *The trunk of the hollow veine.*
HH. *The trunk of the great Arterie.*
IIII. *The Vreters.*
KK. *The veſſels that prepare the ſeed.*
MM. *The ſtones withall their tunicles.*
NN. *The veſſels carrying the ſeed retorted back into the bladder.*
O. *The bladder.*
P. *The neck of the bladder.*
QQ. *The two glandulous Foreſtanders.*
RR. *The two muſcles that erect the yard.*
SS. *Two other muſcles dilating the Vreter.*
T. *The body of the yard.*
U. *The preputium that covers the nut of the yard.*

## Explanation of the ſecond figure.

A. *The bladder turned downward.*
BB. *The inſertion of the vreters into the bladder.*
CC. *The neck of the womb which Anato-*

*miſts call the ſheath which receives* wan
*veſſels.*

EE, EE. *The two lower round ligaments o*
*the womb cut away.*

FF. *The blind veſſel of the womb annexe*
*here to the uppermoſt & broad ligament*

GG. *The ſame veſſel on the other ſide ſe*
*parated from the broad ligament.*

HH. *The deferent or ſeed carrying veſſels o*
*each ſide ending in the neck of the womb*

II. *The upper and membranie ligamen*
*of the womb like the wings of a bat*
*through which many veſſels that ariſ*
*from the preparing veſſels are ſcatte-*
*red and diffuſ'd.*

K. *The preparing veſſels of one ſide no*
*yet diſſerend from the* 1 *membranie*
*or filmie ligament.*

L. *The preparing veſſels on the other ſide*
*ſever'd from the filmie ligament, to*
*ſhew you their inſertion into the ſtone*
*with its filmes,*

MM. *The ſtones, where one is covered, the*
*other is bare.*

NN. *Many veines and arteries ſcattered*
*into the neck & bottome of the womb,*
*ſerving for the purgation of the flowers*
*and the nouriſhment of the birth.*

OO. *The nerves ſcattered through the bo-*
*dy of the womb.*

BRITISH MUSEUM

The

whence they descend, downward and a little from their beginning or original they are joyned to these veins, till they are closed together by an Anastomosis or inoculation, ending like a Piramid.

## CHAP. II.

### *Of the Parastatæ, or vessels where the bloud is first changed.*

These four vessels after many ingraftings and knittings together, seem at length to become onely two bodies, full of little crumplings like the tendril of a vine, white and in the form of a Piramid, resting the right upon the right stone, & the left upon the left stone. These are called *Parastatæ*, which as they stand pierce the tunicles of each stone with certain fibers or extraordinary small veines, which afterwards dispearse themselves through the body of those stones. The substance of these *Parastatæ* is between that of the stones and that of the *preparing vessels*; for they neither altogether consist of Membranes, neither are they altogether Glandulous or kernelly.

## CAAP. III.

### *The use of the preparing vessels.*

The use of those vessels which are called the vessels of preparation is chiefly to attract out of the hollow vein, or left Emulgent, the most pure and exquisitely concocted bloud, which is most apt to be converted into seed; which they contain and prepare, giving unto it a certain rude form of seed in those parts that lie as it were in certain pleights or folds, which they do by a peculiar property bequeathed to them.

Another uſe of them is gathered by their ſcituation, for as they are now ſcituated, that is to ſay, the right vein coming from the hollow vein, and the left from the Emulgent, this inconvenience is avoided, that the left vein is not forced to paſs over the great artery, and ſo be in danger of breaking, by reaſon of the ſwift motion of the artery. Moreover there being a neceſſity that male and female ſhould be begot, it is fit that there ſhould be ſeed proper for the generation of both ſexes, whereof ſome muſt be hotter and ſome muſt be colder; and therefore nature hath ſo ordered it, that the hotter ſeed ſhould proceed from the right vein for the generation of man, and the colder from the left for the generation of females. The left vein hath alſo this property to draw from the Emulgent the more ſerous and leſs pure bloud, to the intent that the ſerous humour might ſtir up venery by its ſalt and acrimonius ſubſtance; and therefore it is obſerved that thoſe who have the left ſtone bigger are moſt full of ſeed, and moſt prone to venery.

The uſe of the *Paraſtatæ* is this, to contain the bloud and ſtay it in their windings and wrinkled bodies, and by power received from the ſtones to change the colour of the bloud.

## CHAP IV.

### *Of the Teſticles in general.*

THe ſtones are in number two, very ſeldome one, and much ſeldomer three or four. The ſcituation of the ſtones in men, is without the Midriff, at the root of the yard under the belly, and that for two cauſes, to keep men more chaſte; it being obſerved

ſerved that thoſe creatures which carry their ſtones within their bodies are more ſalacious, and bring forth in greater numbers.

Their bigneſs is not always alike in all creatures, but in men as big as a Pigeons egg, or as a ſmall Hens egg; and commonly the left is bigger then the right.

In the Anatomy of the ſtones divers things are to be conſidered. Their Tunicles or the skins in which they are wrapt, as well thoſe which are common to both, as thoſe which are particular to either, next the muſcles, then the ſubſtance of which they are compoſed: and laſtly the veſſels which are diſpearſed through the body of the ſtones.

## CHAP. V.

### *Of the Tunicles of the ſtones.*

THe Teſticles are wrapt up in divers coverings, about the number of which there hath been great diſſention. But they are now reduced to five, whereof two are common, and are called *Scrotum*, and *Dartos*, three particular, the names of which are *Elytroydes*, *Erythroides*, and *Epididymis*.

The firſt of theſe, which is like a ſatchel or purſe, and is common to both, conſiſts of a skin and a cuticle. This contains the two ſtones like a purſe, and is obvious to the touch. The skin of this part differs from any other part of the skin which covers the body: for whereas that is ſtretched out and ſpred cloſe over the whole body, this is more looſe, and made to ſtretch out or to be wrinkled up together as occaſion is, that is as the ſtones either aſcend or deſcend:

they aſcend commonly in the time of conjunction, they deſcend in febers, weakneſs of the Teſticles, or by reaſon of old age.

The ſecond Tunicle.

The ſecond is called Dartos, becauſe it is eaſily ſeparated from the others. In this the teſticles lie as it were in a neſt, wrapping them about more cloſe then the Scrotum doth. It takes its Originall from the fleſhie Pannicle, which though it be thinner hereabouts then in any other part of the body, yet is it full of little Veines and arteries.

The proper Tunicles.

The proper Tunicles are firſt the Elytroides which is alſo called Vaginalis by reaſon it ſupplyes the office of a ſheath. It takes its originall from the production of the Peritoneum, for where the ſpermatic veſſells paſs, they do not at all bruſe the Peritoneum, but carie it downe to the ſtones, and ſo conſtitute or make this Tunicle. To know this Tunicle, and the original of it is very neceſſary for Phyſick, becauſe that hollowneſs which the Proceſſes of the Peritoneum do make for the paſſage of the ſpermatic veſſels, is ſomtimes dilated as far as the beginning or ſource of this Tunicle, and both the ſmall guts and the caule fall down upon the Teſticles, which is the cauſe of that kind of birſtneſs which by the Phyſitians is called Enterocle. This Tunicle grows to that which is called Dartos, being ioyned to it by many nervous fibres. Underneath this is the Tunicle called Erythroides, or the red Tunicle; ſo called from the multitude of red veines which are ſprinkled up and down in it. It riſes from the other membranes and is encompaſſed without by the firſt proper tunicle.

The third, and that which immediately compaſſeth the ſtones, is that which is called Epididymis: it is white, thick and ſtrong, to preſerve the ſoft and looſe

loose substance of the stones. It riseth from the Tunicle of the seminal vessels, being the thickest of all the Tunicles, and hath some few veines scattered up and downe in it.

## CHAP. VI.

### *Of the Suspensory Muscles.*

TO keep the stones from oppressing, or stretching over much the passages of the seminal vessels, Nature hath provided them two Muscles for them to hang by, on both sides one, in form oblonge and slender.

The original of these Muscels.

These Muscles derive their original from a thick membrane which is joyned to the hanch bone in the further part of that region, where the hair grows, and is fastened to this bone with certaine fleshie and straight fibers; where the oblique Muscles of the Abdomen or Mideriff end, thence reaching down upon the superiour members of the Testicles, they are extended through the whole length of that round body.

These Muscles are never seen in women being altogether useless, because their stones are not pendent, but are enclosed within their bodies.

## CHAP. VII.

### *Of the substance and temper of the stones.*

THe substance of the stones is glandulous or kernelly, white, soft, loose, spongy, and hollow; having sundrie vessels disperssed through them.

Now although the substance of the Testicles be most soft and moist, yet doth not this moistnes con-

ſtitute a uniforme or homogeneal body; for the ſubſtance of the ſtones is wholly diſſimilar, and full of fibres. Theſe fibres alſo ſeeme to be of a different ſubſtance from that of the ſtones, being only cloathed which the fleſh of the ſtones, as the fibres of the Muſcles are inwardly nervous, but coverd over which the fleſh of the Muſcles. Theſe fibres again differ in this, that the fibres of the Teſticles are hollow, but the fibres of the Teſticles full and ſubſtantiall. Theſe fibres are ſaid to come from the ſpermatick veſſels, and thence branch themſelves forth through the Teſticles, by which that part of the ſeed which is over and above what ſerves for the nouriſhment of the teſticles, as drawn forth and kept for procreation.

As concerning the Temper of the ſtones, they would ſooner be thought cold then hot, if that *Maxime* were true, that all white things are cold, and all red things hot. Nothwithſtanding, becauſe nature is known to abhor all coldneſs in the work of generation; Therefore we muſt preſume to affirme the temper of the ſtones to be hot, for they always abound with blood, and a pure ſpirit, that can never be whichout heat: Beſides that heat is required for the concoction of this blood; and the changing it into ſeed; yet is it very temperate, as appeares by the ſoftneſs of the ſubſtance, for as coldneſs and drineſs is the cauſe of hardneſs, ſo heat and moiſture is the cauſe of ſoftneſs.

Nevertheleſs we are to underſtand this, that the temper of the ſtones is not alike in all, for in ſome they are far colder then in others. And therefore theſe who have hot teſticles are more ſalacious and prone to venereal actions, having the p'aces neer about

bout much more hairie, and their testicles much harder then others. Those that have their testicles cold, find every thing contrary.

The greatest heat is in the right testicle, because it receives more pure and hotter blood from the hollow veine and the great Artery, the left colder, because it receives a more inpure and serous bloud from the Emulgent veine.

## CHAP. VIII.

### *Of the Actions of Testicles.*

THe action and use of the Testicles, is to Generate seed, a gift which they obtaine from an inbred qualitie which nature hath bestowed upon them. For the bloud being received by the spermatic vessels, and there beginning to change it's colour, is by and by received by the deferent vessels, or the vessels which carry the bloud so prepared to the Testicles, where it is for a while contained, and afterwards being carried to the stones is by them made seed, and the last work perfected. And it may with more easinesse be affirmed, that the seed is generated by the stones, because every like is said to generate its like; now the substance of the Testicles is very like the seed it self, that is white moist and viscous. Whether the stones are the onely efficient causes of the seed, is not here to be disputed, being onely a nice point, and no way profitable; we shall rather with silence adhere to that opinion, which affirmes the function of the testicles to be the generation of the seed, which is the most likely, and proceed to the next.

CHAP.

## CHAP. IX.

### *Concerning the Utilitie of the Testicles and their parts.*

THe structure of the Testicles being thus known, It remaines that wee shew you their use. This is first discovered from their situation. For of those creatures that have stones, some have them in their bodyes, as all Fowl, others have them without, though not pendent; others have them hanging downward, as men. Men therefore have their Testicles without their bodys for two causes; first, because it is required that the Testicles of the male should be bigger and hotter then those of the female, so that it were impossibe for them to be contained with the body, because of their quantity. Besides, the seed of the male being the effective original of the creature, and therefore hottest, it is also required that the seed should be more abundant then could be contained in the Testicles, were they placed within the body; for the seminarie passages must have binders, and the veines themselves would not have afforded such plentie of matter as now they doe.

The motion of the Testicles is also to be considered; by which they move somtimes upward and somtimes downward. The one of these motions which is made upward is voluntary, as being made by the muscles, but the motion downward is a forced motion, not happening without the laxitie of the muscles; the Testicles through their own weight falling downwards. These muscles are called Cremasteres, their use being to draw up the Testicles to shorten the way for the Ejaculation of the seed, as also to keep

keep the vessels from being distended too far by the weight of the Testicles.

The use of the Tunicles is now to be spoken of, and first of that which is outermost, and is called by the Latines *Scrotum*, being the purse wherein the Testicles are contained. It is made to wrinkle it self up and to let it self loose that it may be large enough for the Testicles when they swell with plenty of seed, and to wrinkle up again when the Testicles, being emptied and so becoming less, are drawn upward. The other coates or tunicles also made for the defence of the stones, but so thin and light, that they should not oppress the stones with their weight; that which is called *Erythroides* hath many veines for the nourishment of the Adjacent parts. The Epididymis, was made to wrap the testicle round about, lest the Humid matter of the testicle should flow about and consequently be wasted.

## CHAP. X.

### *Of the vessels that cast forth the seed.*

THat passage which comes from the head of the testicles to the root of the yard, is called the Ejaculatorie vessel. This, as I said before, rises from the head of the testicles, and joyning downward to the testicle descends to the bottome; and thence being reflexed again, and annext to the preparing vessel, it returns againe to the head of the testicle, from thence it proceeds upward from the Testicle till it touch the bone of the small guts, still keeping close to the preparing vessel, till it pierce the production of the Hypogastrium. Thence tending downward through the hollowness of the hip, it slydes between

tween the bladder and the ſtreight gut, till it reach the glandulous *Proſtate* or foreſtanders, and fix it ſelf at the foot or root of the yard, and there end. It is not all one at the beginning, and at the end, for at the beginning, while it remains among the tunicles of the teſticles, it is full of windings and turnings; neer the end it hath many little bladders like to warts.

Now we muſt underſtand that theſe ſeminarie veſſels doe not onely containe the ſeed, but they perfit and concoct it, having a ſeminific or ſeed-making qualitie, which they borrow from the *Teſticles*. There are other uſes of theſe ſeminary veſſels: for neer the original of this veſſel, that is to ſay, the head of the teſticles many ſmall paſſages, or as it were conduit-pipes, do ſtretch themſelves forward into the body of the teſticle, into which the genital ſeed that remaines is remitted, and alſo drawn or ſucked from thoſe paſſages; this ſeminarie paſſage is at length wound above the teſticles, adjoyning all along, but no where incorporated into the body of the Teſticle, unleſs at the bottom, in which place it is thought that the ſeed doth again inſinuate it ſelf into the teſticles through thoſe hollow fibres: being thence propagated and continually making ſupply to the ſtones.

It is to be noted alſo, that theſe veſſels while they move to the Root of the yard, do not go by ſtreigth paſſages, which would be then very ſhort, but by crooked windings and turnings, make the paſſages as long as may be, that they may have longer time to containe and prepare the ſeed.

CHAP.

## CHAP. XI.

### *Of the Seminarie bladders.*

AT the end of the deferent veſſels on both ſides, are certain little bladders, knit and joyned together, and placed between the bladder and the right gut; the laſt of which, together which the ſeminarie veſſels, is terminated in the proſtatæ or foreſtanders by a little channel.

Theſe bladders have two ſeveral uſes, for they doe not only ſtriengthen the ſeminarie veſſels where they end, but alſo ſeem to be the ſtores and magazines of the ſeed. They are many, that every time a man uſes the act of venerie, he may have a new ſupply of matter from theſe ſeveral veſicles. Thus that which is next the yard being firſt disburdened, the ſecond is the next time emptied, and ſo till all the ſtore is ſpent; and were it not fortheſe veſicles, a man could not lye which a woman more then once.

In theſe veſſels, ſuch is the propenſitie of nature to propagate, let the body be never ſo much emaciated, there is always found a leſſer or greater quantitie of ſeed. They are hollow and round to containe a greater quantitie of ſeed, they are alſo full of membranes, that they may be contracted or extended as the plenty of ſeed requires; they are crooked and full of windings, and turnings, that the ſeed contained may not eaſily ſlip out.

CHAP.

## CHAP. XII.

### *Of the kernelly Proſtatæ, or foreſtanders.*

THe glandulous proſtatæ or foreſtanders: are two little teſticles as it were ſeated at the foot of the yard, a little above the ſphinctere of the Urinarie veſſels, they are wrapt about with a membrane, which doth alſo cloath the ſeminarie veſſels and veſiicles: before and behind they ſeeme more flat, on the ſides they are more round, they have a ſubſtance like other kernels, looſe and ſpungie, only they differ from them by reaſon of their whiteneſs and hardneſs; they are endued which an exquiſite feeling, to ſtir up a greater deſire of copulation. Theſe Glandulæ or kernels have certaine pores that open themſelves into the Ureter through which the ſeed, theſe foreſtanders being ſqueezed by the lower Muſcles of the yard, diſtils into the yard.

The uſe of theſe kernels is partly to beget an oylie, fat, and ſlipperie ſubſtance, with which the urinarie paſſage is ſometimes anointed, to defend it from the acrimony both of the Seed and Urin, and to keep it always moiſt.

The other uſe is taken from the name of Proſtatæ, which word in the ſingular number ſignifies a tutor or defender, for they are there placed to preſerve and ſtrengthen the ends of the different veſſels, leſt by over much diſtention of the yard, the ſeminary veſſel ſhould be either burſt or moved out of their places.

They have a third uſe, for being placed between the bladder and the right gut, they ſerve inſtead of cuſhions for the veſſel to reſt upon, and to guard them

them from all compreſſion: Hence it hapned ſometimes that thoſe who are very much bound in their bodies while they ſtrain themſelves over-vehemently, do now and then void a kind of ſeed, which happens by a violent compreſſion of thoſe parts.

## CHAP. XIII

### *Of the ſtructure of the Yard.*

THe ſtructure of the Yard is not unknown, that is to ſay, at the root of the ſhare bone in the hinder part of the Hypogaſtrion or lower part of the belly, where the hair grows, which bone is called *Os pubis*. Though the greateſt part of it is not pendent without, but adjoyning to the *podex* is ſcituated near the joyning of the ſhare bone, being faſt knit to it in the *perinæum*, or ſpace between the cods and the fundament; the other part is pendent and is ſeen hanging outward. This ſcituation is moſt appropriated to the manner of the act of generation, uſual and peculiar to men, who do not couple after the manner of beaſts. The figure of it is in a manner round, though not exactly, broader in the upper part which is called the back of the Yard.

The quantity of it.

The Thickneſs and Longitude of the Yard is ſo much as is required for procreation, yet it is not ſo long as in many other creatures. Yea, and in ſeveral men there is a very great diverſity, little men being for the moſt part, beſt provided in that part; It is alſo thought, that there is a national difference, as to the bigneſs of this member; it being a general received opinion, that the often uſe of Venery doth increaſe the quantity of it in all dimenſions.

The Yard will alſo be longer, if the Navel ſtrings are

are not bound up, or knit too close by the midriffe, in children that are newly born; but at some distance from the navel: This happens by reason of the ligament coming fron the navel to the bottom of the bladder; which if it be too much abbreviated, draws up the bladders, and consequently shortens the yard; but if the navel string be left at a longer distance, the Urac hos is inlarged, and consequently the yard hath more liberty to extend it self, and therefore the midwifes are from hence advertised, that they do not spoil the harvestof Generation, by cutting the sithe too short.

The substance of the Yard.

As to the substance of the yard, it is not of a bony substance, as in dogs wolphs or foxes; for so it would become always hard and erected, and hinder men from all busiuess but the act of venerie. Neither is it grisly, for so it could neither erect it self, nor flag, when occasion required; neither is it full of veines, for so it could not be emptied and repleted on such a suddain as often happens; besides that tunicle of the veins are so thin that they could not suffer so great a dissention; neither can it be full of Arteries, because it wants a continual pulsation; neither can it consist of nerves, because they having no hollowness cannot be extended and loosened, as it must of necessity happen to the yard. It is therefore necessary that the yard should have such a substance as is not peculiar to any other part of the body. It is therefore to be understood that there do concur to the framing of the yard, two nervous bodies, the passage for the Urine, which is called Urestua, the glary or nut of the yard, four muscles, the vessels and the skin.

Here doth arise a question, why the yard hath not any

any fat; which is in brief this; becauſe that there ſhould be no hinderance to the perfect ſence of the yard, which could of neceſſity not be avoided, if that member were ſubject to any obeſity; the fat being ſubject to be melted by frication.

## CHAP. XIV.

### *Of the ſeveral parts conſtituting the Yard.*

AMong the parts that compoſe the ſtructure of the yard, is that skin w^ch with its cuticle, and fleſhy pannicle, is common not only to this, but to other members; only it hath this peculiar to it ſelf, that it may be reflexed, and drawn back from the nut of the yard. This skin that turns back is called the preputium; becauſe that part in circumciſion was cut away, with which prepuce, the nut of the yard is covered.

The Glans or nut of the yard is a fleſhy part, ſoft, thin, repleat with bloud and ſpirits; endued with an exquiſite ſence; ſomething ſharp and acute at the end. This is faſtened to the prepuce at the lower part, by a certain ligament, which is therefore called the bridle, or the *filet*, which commonly is broken in the firſt venereal aſſaults, which are for the moſt part the moſt furious. The nut of the yard.

The greateſt part of the yard is conſtituted by two nervous bodies, on both ſides one, which terminate both together in the nut. They riſe from a twofold original, leaning or reſting upon The two nervous bodies,

on the hip, under the ſhare bone; whence as from a ſure foundation they go on till they arrive at the nut of the yard.

Their ſubſtance.

They conſiſt of a double ſubſtance, the firſt is nervous, hard and thick; the inner part black, looſe, ſoft, thin and ſpungy. It is called the *Nervous pipe.* Theſe two bodies are joyned together by a certain membrane, thin, yet nervous, which is ſtrengthened by certain overthwart fibers, being there placed in the likeneſs of a weavers ſhuttle: and though in their original they are ſeperated the one from the other, that there might remain ſome certain ſpace for the ureter; yet they are joyned together about the middle of the ſhare bone; where they loſe about the third part of their nervous ſubſtance.

The Ureter.

The interiour ſubſtance, which is wrapt about by the exteriour nervous ſubſtance, hath this worthy obſervation, that there appears ſtretched through the whole length of it, a thin and tender artery, proportionable to the bigneſs of the body; which is diffuſed through the whole looſe ſubſtance of the yard, reaching as far the root of the yard. Beſides theſe two, there is another body which lies between theſe two, as proper, or rather more peculiar to the yard then they are. This is a pipe placed at the inferiour part of the yard, being called the Vreter, though it be a paſſage as proper to the ſeed, as to the urine; which is encompaſſed by the two fore-mentioned bodies. This is a certain Channel produced in length, and running through the

the middle of thoſe nervous bodies, conſiſting of the ſame ſubſtance that they do, being looſe, thick, ſoft, and tender; every way equal from the neck of the bladder to the nut of the yard, ſaving that it is a little wider at the beginning, then it is toward the place where it ends, which is at the head of the glans or nut of the yard.

The holes of the Ureter.

At the beginning of this Channel there are three holes; one in the middle, and ſomething bigger then the other two, ariſing from the neck of the bladder; the other two on both ſides one, being ſomething narrower, proceeding from the paſſage that goes out of the ſeminary veſſels, and conveighs the ſeed into this channel.

Note.

This is further to be noted in this place, that in the channel, where it is joyned to the glans, together with the nervous bodies, there is a little kind of cavern, in which ſometimes either putrid ſeed, or any other corroding humour, as happens in the gonorrhæa, being collected, is the cauſe of ulcers in that part, the cauſe of very great pain; and it many times alſo comes to paſs, that there is a certain little piece of fleſh which grows out of this ulcer, that oftentimes ſtops up the paſſages of the urine.

The Muſcles of the Yard.

To the ſtructure of the yard, there do moreover concur two pair of muſcles, one more ſhort and thick, proceeding from a part of the hip, near the beginning of the yard, and being of a fleſhy ſubſtance. The uſe of theſe two muſcles, is to ſuſtain the yard in the erection;

and to bend the fore-part of the yard, which is to be inſerted into the womb: the other pair is longer, and riſes from the ſphincter of the fundament, where they are endued with a more fleſhy ſubſtance, being in length full as long as the yard; under which they are carried downward, ending at the ſides of the ureter, about the middle of the yard. Their uſe is to dilate the ureter, both at the time of making water, and at the time of conjunction; leſt it ſhould be ſtopped up, by the repletion of the nervous bodies, and ſo ſtop up the paſſage of the ſeed. They are alſo thought to keep the yard firm, leſt it ſhould lean too much to either ſide, and alſo to preſs out the ſeed out of the proſtata or foreſtanders.

The veſſel of the Yard.

There are veſſels alſo of all ſorts in the yard; firſt of all certain veins appearing in the external parts, and in the cuticle; which branch themſelves out from the Hypogaſtrion. In the middle, betwen the ſpace of the fibres, they ſend out certain branches from the right ſide, to the left, and from the left, to the right. Theſe veins ſwelling with a frothy bloud and ſpirit, erect the yard. There are alſo certain nerves which ſcatter themſelves from the pith or marrow of the holy bone quite through the yard, bringing with them the cauſe of that pleaſure and delight which is perceived in the erection of the yard.

CHAP.

## CHAP. XV.

### *Of the Action of the Yard.*

THe main ſcope of Nature in the uſe of the yard, was the injection of ſeed into the womb of the woman, which injection could not be done, till the ſeed were firſt moved; neither could the ſeed be moved but by frication of the parts, which could not be done, till it were ſheathed in the womb, nor that neither, till the yard were erected.

This diſtenſion is cauſed by repletion; which is cauſed by the plentie of ſeed: Secondly, by ſuperfluitie of wind, which if it be too violent, is the cauſe of *priapiſme*: A Third cauſe proceeds from the abundance of urine contained in the bladder. Somtimes the heat of the reines is a cauſe thereof.

## CHAP. XVI.

### *Of the uſe of the Yard in general.*

THe Yard is ſcituated under the midriff over againſt the womb. And is alſo placed between the thighes, for the greater ſtrengthning of it in the act of copulation; Neither is this the only ſtrength which it hath, for at the lower part it appears more fleſhie, which fleſh is altogether muſcly, for the greater ſtrength thereof. Neither

is it only contented with this Muſclie fleſh, it having too muſcles alſo for the ſame purpoſe, on both ſides to poiſe it even in the act of erection; which though they are but little, yet are they exceeding ſtrong.

The figure of the yard is not abſolutly round, but broader on the upper ſide, leſt it ſhould be hindered by the convexity of the ſuperior part, in the caſting forth of the ſeed.

Concerning the biggneſs of the yard, it is by moſt eſtemed to be of a juſt length, when it is extended the bredth of nine thumbs.

## CHAP. XVII.

### *Of the uſe of the parts conſtituting the Yard.*

THe firſt thing in the conſtitution of the yard, that offeres it ſelf to view, is the skin, which is long and looſe, by reaſon that the yard which is ſometimes to be extended, & ſomtimes to fall downe againe, ſo requires it. The extremity of the skin is ſo ordered, that it ſomtimes covers the glans, and ſomtimes draws back; that whilſt it covers the nut of the yard, it may defend the yard from frication, or provoking the motion of the ſeed.

Moreover this skin in the act of copulation, ſhuts up the mouth of the womb, and hinders the ingreſs of the cold air. Concerning the two nervous bodyes, conſtituting the ſubſtance of the

the yard; their uſe is for the vital ſpirit to run through the thin ſubſtance of them, and fill the yard with ſpirits. Moreover by their thickneſſe, they doe prevent the two haſtie empting and flying out of the ſpirits, which are to ſtay in, for the greater and longer erection of the yard.

The uſe of the Ureter is for the paſſage of ſeed and urine through it. The ſubſtance of the Ureter is much the ſame with the two former bodys; the inſide being more thin and looſe, the outſide more nervous and thick; which is ſo ordained, that it may be more apt to be erected with the yard. It goes forward from the place where it begins, to the end of the ſpermatick veſſels, and the neck of the blader, and the warty foreſtanders where There ariſes a thin and tender membrane, which the Chirurgions ought to take a great deale of care leaſt they break, while they thruſt their ſiringes toward thoſe parts; It is endued with an exquiſite ſenſe to ſtir up pleaſure and venereal deſire.

As to the ſubſtance of the Glans, it is the ſame with that of the yard; only it is not envelop'd with any nervous body. For this ought to be repleted and increaſed, but not hardened; leſt it ſhould injure the bone of the womb, by rubbing too hard upon it. The uſe of the Glans.

The figure of the *Glans* is ſuch that at the top where it is moſt acute, it hath a hole for the iſſuing forth both of ſeed and Urine, which part coming to the mouth of the wombe, caſts

the ſeed into that concavitie, at which time the neck of the wombe with her overthwart fibres, ſeems to take hold and embrace the glans; and that it might take the better hold, nature hath framed a round Circle at the bottom of the yard, for that purpoſe, with a convenient jeting out round about from the body of the yard; by the benefit of which circle, the ſeed is kept in the womb, and not ſuffered to flye out. Laſtly, the Glans is ſo conſtituted, as if all the actions of the yard conſiſted in the Glans; whether in the act of erection, or copulation; or as to the pleaſure which a man perceives that lies all in this place.

BRITISH MUSEUM

SECT.

# SECT. II.

## CHAP. I.

### *Of the Genitals of Women.*

AT the lower part of the belly appears the pubes, or the region of the hair. Under this place are as it were lips of fleſh, which in women that are ripe for man, are clad with hair at the upper part, becauſe of the heat and moiſture of the place; and this part is that which is moſt properly called the *privy member*, being the exteriour orifice, into which the yard of the man enters. In the middle it hath a cleft, on both ſides of which are two fleſhy protuberances, beſet with hair, being two ſoft oblong bodies compoſed of skin and a ſpungy kind of fleſh.

## CHAP. II.

### *Of thoſe parts called Mymphs and Clytoris.*

THe Nymphæ or wings are a membraine or filmy ſubſtance, ſoft and ſpungy, and partly

ly fleſhy; they are of a ruddy colour, like the comb of a Cock under his throat; they are two in number, though in the beginning they are joyned together by an acute Angle, where they produce a carneous ſubſtance, like the preputium which cloaths the Clytoris. Sometimes theſe wings ſo far encreaſe, that there is many times need of inciſion; a diſeaſe common among the Egyptians.

The Clytoris. The Clytoris, is a certain ſubſtance in the upper part of the great cleft, where the two wings concur. This in women is the ſeat of venereal pleaſure: It is like the yard in ſcituation, ſubſtance, compoſition, and erection, and hath ſomething correſpondent both to the prepuce, and to the glans in men. Sometimes it grows out to the bigneſs of the yard, ſo that it hath been obſerved, to grow out of the body the breadth of four fingers.

This Clytoris conſiſts of two ſpungie and ſinewy bodies, having a diſtinct original, from the bone of the pubes. The head of this is covered with a moſt tender skin, and hath a hole like the glans, though not quite through, in which, and in the bigneſs it differs only from the yard.

CHAP.

## CHAP. IV.

### *Of the fleshie knobs, and the greater neck of the womb.*

PRresently behinde the wings, before we go far inward in the middle of the cleft, there do appear four knobs of flesh, being placed in a quadrangular form one against the other; they are said to resemble Myrtle berries in form. In this place is inserted the orifice of the bladder, which opens it self into the fissure, to cast forth the Urine into the common channel. Now lest any cold air or dust, or any such thing should enter into the bladder after the voiding of the Urine, one of these knobs is seated so, that it shuts the urinary passage. The second is right opposite to the first, the other two collateral. They are round in virgins, but they hang flaging when virginity is lost.

The lipps of the womb being gently separated, the neck of the womb is to be seen, in which two things are to be observed; the neck it selfe, or the Channel, and the Hymen, which is there placed: by the neck of the womb, is understood the Chaunel, which is between the said knobs, and the inner bone of the womb; which receives the yard like a sheath; the substance of it is finewie, and a little spungie, that it may be dilated; In this concavitie there are certaine folds or orbicular pleights; these are made by

The neck of the womb.

The substance.

a certain tunicle, ſo wrinkled, as if a man ſhould fold the skin with his fingers. In virgins they are plaine; in women with often copulation, they are oftentimes worn out, ſometimes they are wholy worn out, & the inner ſide of the *neck* appeares ſmooth, as it happens to whores; and women that have often brought forth, or have bin over troubled with their fluxes. In old women it becomes more hard and griſly. Now though this channel be ſomthing writhed and crooked when it falls and ſinkes downe, yet in time of the flowers and copulation, or in time of travel it is erected and extended, and this over-great extenſion in women that bring forth, is the cauſe of that great pain in child-bed.

## CHAP. V.

### *Of the Hymen.*

The Hymen.

THe Hymen is a membrane not altogether without blood, neither ſo tender as the reſt, but more ruddie, and ſcattered up and downe with little veins, & in a circular form; it is placed overthwart, and ſhuts up the cavity of the neck of the womb. In the middle it hath a little hole, through which the menſes are voided. This at the firſt time of copulation is broken, which cauſes ſome pain, and guſhing forth of ſome quantity of blood; which is an evident ſign of virginitie; for if the blood do not flow, there is a ſuſpition of a former deflowring.

CHAP.

## CHAP. VI.

### *Of the veſſels that run through the neck of the womb.*

BEtween the Duplicitie of the two tunicles, that conſtitute the neck of the womb, there are many veines and arteries that run a long; ariſing from thoſe veſſels, that deſcend on both ſides to the thighs, and are inſerted into the ſide of the neck of the womb: the great quantity and bigneſs of them deſerves admiration; for they are much bigger then the nature and openneſs of the place ſeems to require. The cauſe of the largneſs of the veſſels.

The cauſe of this is two fold; firſt becauſe it being requiſite for the neck of the bladder to be fil'd with abundance of ſpirits, & to be extended and dilated for the better taking hold of the yard; there is required a great heat for theſe kind of motions, which growing more intenſe by the act of frication, doth conſume a great quantitie of moiſture, ſo that great veſſels are requiſite, and onely able to make that continual ſupply that is needfull.

There is another cauſe of the longneſs of theſe veſſels, which is this; becauſe that the monthly purgations are poured through thoſe veines; for the flowers muſt not come onely out of the womb, but out of the neck of the womb alſo: whence it happens, that women with child do ſomtimes continue their purgations, becauſe that though Note.

though the wombe be ſhut up, yet the paſſages in the neck of the womb are open.

The two holes, or pits, near the lips of the pudendum.

This is alſo further to be noted in the neck of the womb, that as ſoone as ever your ſight is entered within the female fiſſure, there do appeare to the view, two certaine little holes, or pits, where in is contained a ſerous humor; which being preſſed out in the act of copulation, doe not a little add to the pleaſure thereof.

This is the humor with which women doe moiſten the top of a mans yard; not the ſeed but a humor proper to the place, voided out by the womb.

## CHAP. VII.

### *Of the fabrick of the womb.*

TO the neck of the womb, the wombe it ſelf is adjoyned, in the lower part of the Hypogaſtrion, where the Hips are wideſt and broadeſt; which are greater and broader thereabouts then thoſe of men; which is the reaſon alſo that they have broader buttockes then men have.

The womb.

The womb is placed between the bladder and the ſtraight Gut; being joyned to the bladder and leaning upon the ſtreight Gut; where it lies as between two cuſhions; this ſituation of the wombe was fitteſt, that ſo it might have libertie to be ſtretched or contracted, according to the biggneſs of the fruit contained in it.

The

The figure of the wombe is round, and not unlike a Gourd that leſſens and growes more acute at the one end; the bottome of the womb is knit together by Ligaments of its own, which are peculiar. The neck of the womb is joyned by its own ſubſtance, and by certaine membranes to the ſhare bone and the ſacred bone. The figure.

As to the bigneſs of it, that varies according to the age, conſtitution of the body, and uſe of venerie. For it is much greater in women that have brought forth, then in thoſe that are with child, and after the birth, for the moſt part it exceeds the bigneſs of the bladder; but in virgins it is for the moſt part equal to the bladder. The bigneſs.

It is of a ſubſtance ſo thick as that it exceeds a thumbs bredth in thickneſs, which after conception is ſo far from decreaſing, that it increaſes ſtill to a greater bulk and proportion.

This ſubſtance the more to confirme it, is interweaved with all manner of fibres, ſtreight, obſique, and overthwart. The fibres.

The Veſſels of the womb are Veins, Arteries, and Nerves. The veins.

There are two little veines which are carried from the ſpermatick veſſels to the bottom of the wombe; and two greater from the Hypogaſtricks, which go not onely to the bottom, but to the neck. The mouth of theſe veines pierce as farr as the inward concavitie; in which place the extremities of them are called *Acetabula*;

*bula*; which in the time of the flowers, gape and open themſelves by reaſon of the great plenty and ſtream of bloud, that powres it ſelfe from thence; and therefore they are at that time moſt conſpicuous; In women with Child, that which is called the *Liver of the wombe*, is joyned to them, that it might draw blood for the nouriſhment of the child; at which time theſe veins doe ſo ſwell, but eſpecially in the time of neer deliverie, that they are as bigg as the Emulgent veines, or at leaſt half as thick as the *Hollow veines*.

The Arteries. It hath two Arteries on both ſides, the Spermatick, and the Hypogaſtrick, which every where doe accompany the veines.

The womb hath alſo divers little Nerves knit together in forme of a net, which are carried not only to the interior part of the bottom of the womb, but alſo to the neck, and as far as the privities themſelves; and that cheifly for ſence and pleaſure; for which cauſe there is a great ſympathy between the womb and the head.

Note. This is alſo further to be noted, that the womb in its ſituation is not fixed and immoveable, but moveable, by reaſon of two ligaments which hang on both ſides, from the ſhare bone, and piercing through the Peritonæum; are joyned to the bone it ſelf, ſo that it ſomtimes happens that through thoſe holes of the Peritonæum, which give paſſage to theſe ligaments being looſned, either the Omentum or Call, or the Entrails

Entrailes, doe ſwell outwardly, and cauſe the burſtneſs either of the Caule, or of the Guts, and ſometimes it happens by reaſon of the looſnes of thoſe ligaments, that the womb is moved with ſuch a force, that it falls down; and in the act of Copulation is moved up and downe; ſomtimes it moves upward, that ſome women doe affirme that it aſcends as high as their ſtomach. Now though the womb be one continued body, yet is it divided into the *mouth*, and the bottom.

The bottom of the womb is called all that which by ſtill aſſending ſtretches it ſelf from the internal orifice to the end; being narrow toward the Mouth, but dilating it ſelf by little and little, till it come at the entrailes.

The mouth of the womb, is that narrowneſs between the neck and the bottom; it is an oblong and tranſverſe Orifice; but where it opens it ſelfe, orbicular, and round, the Circumference very thick and of an exquiſite feeling; and if this mouth be out of order, and be troubled with ſchirrus, brawn or over-fatneſs, over-moiſture, or relaxation, it is the cauſe of barrenneſs. In thoſe that are big with child, there uſes to ſtick to this orifice; a thick viſcous glutinous matter, that the parts moiſtened may be the more eaſily opened. For in the deliverie, this *mouth* is opened after a very ſtrange and miraculous manner, ſo that according to the bigneſs of the birth, it ſuffers an equal dilatation, from the bottom of the womb to the privy member.

## CHAP. VI.

### *Of the preparing veſſels in women.*

The veſſels.

THe ſpermatick preparing veſſels, are two veins and two arteries, differing not at all from thoſe of men, either in their number, original, action, or uſe, but only in their bigneſs and the manner of their *inſertion*. For as to their number, there are ſo many veins, and ſo many arteries, as in men. They ariſe alſo from the ſame place as in men, that is to ſay, the right, from the trunk of the hollow vein deſcending; the left, from the left Emulgent.

The Arteries.

There are two arteries alſo, on both ſides one, which grows from the Aorta; theſe both bring vital bloud for the work of generation.

As to the Longitude and Latitude of theſe veſſels, they are narrower and ſhorter in women, only where they are wrinkled, they are much more wreathed and contorted then in men; for the way being ſhorter in women then in men, nature required that for ſtretching out of theſe veſſels, that they ſhould be more wrinkled and crankled then in men, that the bloud might ſtay there in greater quantity, for the preparation of the ſeed.

The inſertion of the veſſels.

Theſe veſſels in women are carried with an oblique courſe through the ſmall guts to the ſtones, being wrapt up in fatter membranes; but in the mid-way they are divided into two branches

branches whereof the greater branch goes to the ſtone, conſtituting the varicous or winding body, and thoſe wonderful inoculations: the leſſer branch ends in the womb; in the ſides of which it is ſcattered up and down, and chiefly at the higher part of the bottome of the womb, for nouriſhment of the womb and of the birth; and that ſome part of the flowers may be purged out through thoſe veſſels: Now becauſe the ſtones of women are ſeated near the womb, for that cauſe theſe veſſels fall not from the peritoneum, neither make they ſuch paſſages as in men, neither reach they to the ſhare bone.

## CHAP. VII.

### *Of the Stones in Women.*

THe ſtones of women, although they do perform the ſame actions, and are for the ſame uſe as mens, yet they differ from them in ſcituation, ſubſtance, temperament, figure, magnitude, and in their covering.

They are ſeated in the hollowneſs of the Abdomen; neither do they hang out as in men, but they reſt upon the muſcles of the Loynes; and this for that cauſe that they might be more hot and fruitful; being to elaborate that matter, which with the ſeed of man engenders man. Their ſcituation.

In this place ariſes a queſtion, not trivial; whether the ſeed of woman be the efficient, or A doubt.

the material cauſe of generation? to which it is anſwered, that though it have a power of acting, yet that it receives the perfection of that power from the ſeed of man.

Their figure.

The ſtones of women differ from mens alſo, as to their figure, becauſe they are not ſo round and oval as thoſe of men, being in their fore and hinder part more depreſſed and broad; the external ſuperficies being more unequal, as if a great many knots and kernels were mixed together. There is alſo another difference, as to the ſubject, becauſe they are ſofter and moiſter then thoſe of men, being more looſe and ill compacted.

The bigneſs and temper.

Their magnitude and temperament do alſo make a difference, for the ſtones of women are much colder and leſſer then mens; which is the reaſon that they beget a more thin and watry ſeed.

Their coverings alſo do make a difference, for mens are wrapt up in divers tunicles, becauſe being pendent outward, they were otherwiſe more ſubject to external injuries; but the ſtones of women have but one tunicle, which though it ſtick very cloſe to them, yet are they alſo half cloth'd over with the Peritoneum.

CHAP.

## CHAP. VIII.

### *of the deferent or ejaculatory vessels.*

THe deferent vessels are two blind passages, on both sides one, nothing differing in substance from the spermatick veines. They rise in one part from the bottom of the womb, neither doe they reach from their other extremitie, either to the stone or to any other part, but are shut up, and unpassable, adhering to the womb, just as the the blind gut adheres to the Colon; but winding halfe way about the stones, are every waies remote from them, no where touching them, onely are tied to them with certaine membranes, not unlike the winges of Bats, through which certaine veines and arteries, being produced from the stones, doe run; and end in these passages: where they begin, at the bottom of the womb, they are hollow and large, but as they proceed further on, they grow narrower, till near their end they do again obtain a larger bigness; these two passages thus running from the corners of the womb, to the stones, are taken only to be certaine ligaments, by which the stones and the womb are strongly knit together; and these ligaments in women, are the same things with the Cremasteres in men.

## CHAP. IX.

### *Of the Actions and Uſes of the Genital parts in Women.*

IN the privie part are ſeen, the Pubes, the mountaines of veins, the two lipps, the Orifice, under which the two wings lye hid the little knobs of fleſh, reſembling myrtle berries, the paſſages of the Urin and the Clytories.

As for the pubes and the Mountains of Venus, they ſerve for this uſe, that the great Orifice might be the better ſhut, and to avoyd *compreſſion* in copulation; for which cauſe they are beſet with haire, and are covered with a hard kind of fat; the great orifice receives the yard, and gives paſſage to the Urine and the birth. The uſe of the wings, or knobs of fleſh, like Myrtle berries, are for the defence of the internall parts, ſhutting the orifice of the neck, leaſt cold aire, duſt, or any other annoyances, ſhould hurt it, from without; and while they ſwell up, they cauſe titillation and deſire in thoſe parts. Laſtly, the paſſages of the Urine being ſhut up by the knobs of fleſh reſembling myrtle berries, hinders the unvoluntarie paſſage of the Urine.

CHAP.

## CHAP. X.

### *Of the action of the Clytoris.*

THe action of the Clytoris is like that of the yard, which is erection; which erection is for the motion and attraction of the ſeed.

## CHAP. XI.

### *Of the action and uſe of the neck of the womb.*

THe action of the neck of the womb, is the ſame with that of the yard; that is to ſay, erection, which is occaſioned divers ways. Firſt, all this paſſage is erected and made ſtreight, for the better conveyance of the yard to the womb. Then while the whole paſſage is erected, it is repleated with ſpirit and vital bloud, whereby it becomes narrower for the more ſtreight embracing of the yard.

The cauſes of this erection are, firſt, becauſe if the womb were not erected, the yard could not have a convenient paſſage into the womb; ſecondly, it would hinder convenient affrication, without which the ſeed could not be drawn forth. Laſtly, it hinders any hurt or damage which might be done by the violent force of the yard.

## CHAP. XII.

### *Of the uſes of the veſſels running through the neck of the womb.*

FIrſt, it is required that there ſhould be a concurrence of divers veins and arteries, for the nouriſhment of that part; and though that part it ſelf being full of membranes does not require much nouriſhment, yet by reaſon that it is to ſuffer erection, that could not be done but by bloud and ſpirits, which are contained in theſe veſſels; beſides, although the ſubſtance of this part be of a cold temperament, being notwithſtanding ſtill heated by the act of copulation, that heat would ſoon conſume a ſlender nouriſhment, which nature hath ſupplied by the concourſe of theſe veſſels. Another cauſe of the plenty of theſe veins, is nouriſhment of the birth, and the excluſion of the flowers.

## CHAP. XIII.

### *Of the actions of the womb.*

THe firſt uſe of the womb is to attract the ſeed, by a familiar ſympathy, juſt as the load-ſtone draws iron.

The ſecond uſe is to retain it, which is properly called conception.

The third is to cheriſh the ſeed thus attracted,

to

to altar it, and change it into the birth, by raising up that power which before lay sleeping in the seed, and to reduce it from power into act: The fourth action of the womb is to send forth the birth at the time prefixed; the apt time of expulsion, is when the expulsive faculty begins to be affected with some sence of trouble, that is when the birth afflicts and oppresses the womb with its own weight.

Besides these uses, it hath these moreover to nourish the birth, and to dilate it self, which it doth by the help of veins and arteries, which do fill more and more with matter, as nature requires.

The chiefest action of the womb and most proper to it, is the retention of the seed; without which, nothing of other action could be performed for the generation of man. The proper actions of the womb.

## CHAP. XIV.

### *Of the utility of the womb.*

FIrst, it is the most fit place for copulation, as being in a place furthest removed from the senses, near which it were not fit to be, by reason of the inconveniencies which would necessarily arise.

It is most fit to receive the birth, as being hollow, in which concavity the birth may increase to its full proportion every way.

It is most fit for the exclusion of the birth, as

as being placed downward, whereby the birth might help its ſelf with its own weight; and alſo by reaſon of the muſcles of the Abdomen, which ſerve for compreſſion, aud do help the endeavours of the mother.

## CHAP. XV.

### *Of the Utility of the preparing veſſels in women.*

THe Utilities of theſe veſſels are taken, firſt, from their original, and from their inſertion, the right vein riſing from the hollow, and the left from the emulgent, as in men, that the more hot and purer bloud might come from the right vein, for the procreation of males, and the more ſerous and watry bloud from the Emulgent, for the generation of women.

The veſſels alſo in women are ſhorter then in men, becauſe the way is not ſo far to the ſtones; which brevity of the veſſels is lengthened out by the many turnings and windings with which thoſe veſſels are endued. In the middle way thoſe veſſels divide themſelves like a fork, the greater part going to the ſtones, carrying the matter for ſeed; the leſſer is carried to the womb, where it ſcatters it ſelf all along the ſides of it, for the Nutrition of the womb.

As for the Arteries, they afford the bloud which is more full of ſpirits to perfect the ſeed.

CHAP.

## CHAP. XVI.

### *Of the Utility of the ſtones.*

THe uſe of the ſtones in women, is the ſame as in men; that is to ſay, to prepare the ſeed, and to make it fit for procreation. They are ſeated within, that they ſhould not want a continual heat, to cheriſh them; for the matter of the ſeed being colder in men then in women, it requires a greater heat, which it would of neceſſity want, were the ſtones placed outward, like thoſe of men; and for that cauſe are they covered only with one tunicle, that the heat of thoſe parts may more eaſily paſs to them. And therefore the ſtones of women, are ſofter then thoſe of men, becauſe they ſhould not perfect ſo ſubſtantial a ſeed; and that the heat of the adjacent parts ſhould not be wholly taken up in the cheriſhing of them.

Their figure is not exactly round, but depreſſed, that the little Meanders of the veins diſperſed through the membrane, from the ſtones to the deferent veſſels, might have more roome to be inſerted for the attraction of the ſeed, out of the whole ſubſtance of the ſtone. The inequality and ruggedneſs of them makes for the longer ſtay of the ſeed in thoſe crooked and winding veſſels. Their figure.

SECT.

# SECT. III.

## CHAP. I.

### *Of the ſignes of Conception.*

Signs of conception.

HAving thus ſhewed you the Anatomy and uſe of the parts, it will be requiſite to diſcourſe of the conception it ſelf, which is the main and chief end of theſe veſſels: And firſt of the ſigns of conception.

The ſignes of conception on the mothers ſide, are certaine and apparent; firſt, if after ſhe hath had the company of her husband, ſhe hath received more content then ordinary.

Pains in the head, vertigo, dimneſs of the eys; all theſe concurring together, portend conception; the apples of the eyes decreaſe, the eyes themſelves ſwell and become of a dark colour, the veins of the eyes wax red, and ſwell with blood, the eyes ſink, the eye-brows grow looſe, various colours appear in the eyes, little red pimples riſe in the face, the veines between the noſe and the eyes ſwell with blood, and are ſeen more plain; the vein under the tongue looks greeniſh,

nish, the neck is hot, the back-bone cold, the veins and arteries swell, and the pulses are observed more easily; the veins in the breast first look of a black colour, but afterward turn yellowish, the teats looke red; if she drink cold drinke, she feeles the cold in her breast, she loaths her meat and drinke, she hath divers longings, but her naturall appetite is destroyed: continual vomitings follow, and weakness of the stomach, sower beleches, wormes about her navel, faintness of the loynes, the lower part of her belly swelling, inward griping of the body, the retention of the seed seaven dayes after the act of copulation; after which act there is a cold and trembling, which seizes the external members; the attractive force of the womb increases, the womb dries up. It is also a certain sign of conception if the Midwife touching with her finger the interiour neck of the womb, shall find it exactly closed, so that the point of a needle will not go between: the womb waxeth round and swels, the flowers cease to flow, for the veins through which they come down, carry the bloud to the nourishment of the birth; the thighs swell with some pain, the whole body grows weak, and the face waxes pale; the Excremeuts proceed slower out of the body: the Urine is white, a little cloud swimming at the top, and many atoms appear in the Urine. Take the Urine of a woman and shut it up three days in a glass, if she have conceived, at the end of three days there will appear in the Urine certain

live

live things, to creep up and down. Take alſo the Urine of a woman, and put it in a baſon a whole night together, with a clean and bright needle in it, if the woman have conceived, the needle will be ſcattered full of red ſpeckles, but if not, it will be black and ruſtie.

## CHAP. II.

### *Whether ſhe have conceived a Male.*

Conception of a Male.

IF ſhe have conceived a male childe, the right eye will move ſwifter, and look clearer then the left. The right pap will alſo riſe and ſwell beyond the left, and grow harder, and the colour of the teats will change more ſuddainly. The milk will increaſe more ſuddainly, and if it be milked out and be ſet in the Sun, it will harden into a clear maſs, not unlike pearl. If you caſt the Milk of the woman upon her Urine, it will preſently ſink to the bottom. Her right cheek is more muddy, and the whole colour of her face is more cheerful; ſhe feels leſs numneſs: The firſt motion of the child is felt more lively in the right ſide for the moſt part upon the ſixtieth day. If her flowers flow the fourtieth day after conception. The belly is more acute toward the navel. As the woman goes ſhe always puts her right leg forward, and in riſing ſhe eaſes all ſhe can her right ſide ſooner then her left.

CHAP.

## CHAP. III.

### *Whether she have conceived a Female.*

IF she have conceived a Female the signs are for the most part contrary to those aforesaid. Conception of a Female.

The first motion is made most commonly the nintieth day after conception, which motion is made in the left side; Females are carried with greater pain, her thighs and Genital members swell; her colour is paler, she hath a more vehement longing. Her flowers flow the thirtieth day after conception. Girles are begot of parents who are by nature more cold and moist, their seed being more moist, cold and liquid.

## CHAP. IV.

### *Of the Conception of Twins.*

IF a woman have conceived twins, the signes thereof appears not till the third or fourth moneth after her conception; and then it will appear by the motion of the Infant, and by the extraordinarie swelling of her belly. As to the motion, it is plaine that she doth beare twins if she perceive a motion on the right and left side at the same instant, which she perceives more quick and violent. As for the greatness of the belly, if the woman perceive it bigger then at any Conception of Twins.

any other times of her being with child, as alſo if the two flanks be ſwelled higher then the middle of the belly; if there doe appeare, as it were, a line of deviſion from the navel to the groine, making a kind of channel all a long; if the woman carrie her burden with more then ordinary paine: Theſe are commonly the ſignes of twins.

## CHAP. V.

### *Of falſe Conception.*

False Conception.

WOmen doe oftentimes deceive themſelves concerning their conception; for they doe many times beleive themſelves to be big with child, when it is nothing elſe but either the retention of their flowers, which doe not fall down according to their accuſtomed periods of time, or elſe that which is called the *Moon-calfe*, which is a lump of fleſh, for the moſt part like the guiſern of a bird, greater or leſſer, according to the time of its being there, which is moſt commonly not above foure or five months.

Several ſorts of Moles.

Of moles there are two ſorts; the one is called the true mole, the other is called the falſe mole. The true mole is a fleſhie body, filled with many veſſels, which have many white, green, or black lines, or membranes; it is without thought, without motion, without bones, without bowels, or entrailes; receiving its nouriſhment through certain

certaine veines; it lives the life of a plant, without any figure or order being engendered in the concavitie of the matrix, adhearing to the sides of it, but borrowing nothing of its substance.

Of the false mole there are four sorts, *the windie mole*, which is a conflux of wind; the watrie mole, which is a conflux of watrie humours; the Humorous mole, which is a conflux of various humours; the Membranous mole, which is a thin bag filled with blood. All these four are contained in the concavity of the womb. Of the false mole.

These moles are somtimes engendered with the Infant, though they do oftentimes cause the Infant to die, either because it doth deprive the Infant of that nourishment, which goes from the infant to the encrease of that, or else because it hinders the growth and perfection of the Infant. The cause of the fleshy mole doth not always proceed from the mother, for the man doth often contribute to the encrease of it, when the seed of the man is weak, imperfect and barren, or though it be good, if there be too small a quantity of it, which after it is mingled with the seed of the woman, is chok'd by the menstrual bloud, and so not being sufficient for the generation of the Infant, instead thereof produces this little mass of flesh, which by little and little grows bigger; being wrapt about in a caule, while nature strives to engender any thing rather then to be idle. Sign of moles.

It happens also when the woman during her

monethly purgations receives the company of her husband, her body being not yet purged and void; or else when the woman lies with a great desire and lust with her husband, after she hath conceived, or when she hath retained her monethly courses beyond her time.

The windy mole. The windy mole, is engendered by the weak heat of the matrix, and the parts adjoyning, as the liver and the spleen, which engender a quantity of winde, which fix in the concavity of the matrix.

The watry mole. The watry Mole, is engendered of many confluences of water, which the womb receives, either from the speen, or the liver, or the parts adjoyning, or else from the weakness of the liver which cannot assimulate the bloud which is sent thither, for the nourishment of the thing contained in it; part whereof turns into water, which cannot be voided, but remains in the womb.

That which is called the Humorous mole, is engendered of many moist humours, serosities, or the whites, or certain watry purgations, which sweat forth from the menstruous veins, and are contained in the concavity of the matrix.

The membranous mole. The Membranous mole, is a skin or bag, which is garnished with many white and transparent vessels, filled up with bloud: This being cast into the water, the bloud goes out, and the membrane is seen only to gather like a heap of clotted seed.

False

False Conception hath many signes, common with the true conception; as the supression of the flowers, depraved appetite, vomitings, swelling of the belly, and of the breasts; so that it is a hard thing to distinguish the one from the other: only these that follow are more properly the signs of false, then true conception. For in false conception, the face is ordinarily puffed up, the breasts, that at the first were swollen, afterwards become every day more then other softer and lanker, and without milk. In fine, the face, the breast, the arms, the thighs and groynes grow lank and meager: The belly waxes hard, as happens to those who are troubled with the Dropsie, and almost of an equal roundness; with many pricking pains, at the bottom of the belly, which have scarce any intermission; which is the cause that they can hardly sleep, being encombered with a heavy and dead burthen. It may be known also by other signs, for in the conception the Male Infant begins to move at the beginning of the third moneth, for the most part, and the female at the beginning of the third or fourth moneth, now where any motion happens, the woman ought to observe whether she have any milk in her breasts or no, if she have milk in her breasts, it is a sign of true conception, if she have not, it is a sign of a false one. Besides, in true conception, the mother shall perceive her child to move on all sides, oftner though to the right flank then to the left, The signs of false conception.

ſometimes up, ſometimes down, without any affiſtance; but in falſe conception, although there be a kind of motion, which is not enliven'd that proceeds from the expulſive faculty of the mother, and not from the *mole*. The mother ſhall alſo perceive it to tumble always on that ſide ſhe lies, not having any power to ſuſtain it ſelf; beſide as ſhe lies on her back, if any one do puſh gently downward the burthen of her belly, ſhe ſhall perceive it to lie and reſt in the place where it was puſhed, without returning thither: Beſide that which will confirm it more, is, when after the end of nine moneths the woman ſhall not come to her travel, but that her belly ſtill ſwels and is puffed up more and more, all the reſt of the parts of the body growing thin and meager, this is a ſign of a mole, notwithſtanding that many women have been known to go ten or eleven moneths before their delivery.

The ſigns of the windy mole are theſe, when the belly is equally ſtretched and ſwelled up like a bladder, more ſoft then when it bears the fleſhie mole, aud eſpecially near the groynes and ſmall of the belly; if it be ſtruck on, it ſounds like a drum; ſometime the ſwelling decreaſes, but by and by it ſwels more and more; the woman feels her ſelf more light, it is engendered and encreaſes ſwifter then the fleſhie mole, or the watry, and it makes ſuch a diſſention of the belly, as if one were tearing it a ſunder: For the watery and humorous mole, the ſigns are almoſt

almoſt the ſame; the belly increaſes and ſwels by little and little, as the woman lies upon her back, the ſides of her belly are more ſwelled and diſtended then the middle, or the bottom of the belly, which grows flatter then, by reaſon that the water and the humours fall down to the ſides of the belly, moving up and down on the belly, as if there were a fluctuation of water there.

This diſtinction is more to be obſerved in the watry mole, that the flank and thighs are more ſtretched and ſwollen then the humoral, becauſe that the waters flow thither oftentimes, and that which comes forth through natures conduite, is as clear as rock water, without any ill ſavour: but that which flows out in the *humoral* diſtemper is more red, like water wherein fleſh hath been waſhed, and is of an ill ſavour. This is alſo to be marked in falſe conception, that the flowers never come down, and the navel of the mother advances it ſelf little or nothing, both which happen in true conception.

There are beſides theſe above written, certain other tumours which the women do take for moles. Theſe occaſion a rotundity and ſwelling in the belly, which are not diſcovered till the woman be opened, and then there doth appear, though the body of the womb be clean and neat, without any thing contained in it, at one or both corners of the womb, a quantity of water, contained as it were in little bags; in others are to be ſeen a heap of kernels and ſu-

perfluous fleſh cluſtered up together in the womb, which cauſe it to ſwell. Yet in theſe women it hath been obſerved, that their purgations have been very regular, which hath been a ſign that the womb it ſelf hath been in good temper.

The pendent mole.

There is alſo another excreſcency of fleſh, which may be termed a pendent mole, which is a piece of fleſh, hanging within the inner neck of the womb, which at the place where it is faſtened, is about a fingers breadth, ſtill increaſing bigger and bigger toward the bottom like a little bell: This fleſh hanging in the interior neck of the womb, poſſeſſes the whole orifice of the privy member, ſometimes appearing outward, as big as the fiſt, as hath been obſerved in ſome women. Of the cures of all theſe we ſhall treat in due place.

## CHAP. VI.

### *How women with childe ought to govern themſelves.*

IN the firſt place ſhe ought to chuſe a temperate and wholſome air, neither too hot nor too cold, nor in a watry and damp place, nor too ſubject to fogs or winds, eſpecially the South winde, which is a great enemy to women with childe, cauſing oft times abortion in them. The North winde is alſo hurtful, engendring Rhumes and Catarrhs and Coughs, which do often

ten force a woman to lie down before her time. Likewiſe the winds which carry with them evil odours and vapours, for theſe being ſucked with the air into the Lungs, are the cauſe of divers diſeaſes.

For her diet ſhe ought to chuſe meat that breeds good and wholſome nouriſhment, and which breeds good juice, ſuch are meats that are moderately drie, the quantity ought to be ſufficient, both for themſelves, and for their children, and therefore they are to faſt as little as may be, for abſtinence unleſs upon good occaſion renders the child ſickly, and tender, and conſtrains it to be born before its time, to ſeek for nouriſhment, as the over-much diet ſtuffs it up, or renders it ſo big, that it can hardly keep its place. Her Diet.

All meats too cold, too hot, and too moiſt, are to be avoided, as alſo the uſe of ſalads and ſpiced meats; and the too much uſe of ſalt meats, are alſo forbidden, which will make the childe to be born without nails, a ſign of ſhort life. Her bread ought to be good wheat, well baked and levened. Her meats ought to be Pigeons, Turtles, Pheſants, Larks, Partrige, Veal, and Mutton. For herbs ſhe may uſe Lettice, Endive, Bugloſs, and Burrage, abſtaining from raw Salads: for her laſt courſe ſhe may be permitted to eat Pears, Marmalad, as alſo Cherries and Damſons; ſhe muſt avoid all meats that are diuretick, and provoke urine, or the termes, and ſuch meats as are windy, as Peaſe, and Beans. Yet becauſe there are ſome women that have ſuch depraved Of Longing.

ſtomachs, by reaſon of a certain ſalt and ſower humor contained in the membranes of the ſtomach, as that they will eat coles, chalke, aſhes, cinders, and ſuch like traſh, ſo that it is impoſſible to hinder them; to ſuch therefore we can only ſay thus much, that they ought to forbear as much as in them lies, aſſuring them that ſuch traſh does not only endanger their own health, but the health of the childe. Yet if they cannot command that depraved appetite, let them ſo provide, though it be by giving ſome ſmall ſatisfaction to their depraved longings, that they do not haſten any further inconvenience; for though thoſe ſtrange meats be very contrary to nature, yet the ſtrange deſire that they have to them, does not a little avail to the diſgeſtion of them. For her drink, let it be ſmall Ale, though now and then a cup of pure wine does not amiſs, to comfort the ſtomach and the parts dedicated to generation.

Her ſleeping. Her time of ſleep is beſt in the night, for the concoction of thoſe meates which ſhe hath eate in the day time: ſhe muſt avoid, by all meanes, the ſleeping after dinner; ſhe may ſleep full out nine houres; her ſleeping beyond that time is prejudiciall.

Her exerciſe. She may exerciſe her ſelf moderately, for violent exerciſe looſens the Cotyledons, through which the Infant receives his nouriſhment: the riding in coaches is forbid eſpecially, for the laſt three months.

She

She ought to avoyd great noiſes, as the noiſe of Guns, or great bels. Other precepts.

Laughing, crying, if it be immoderate, is extremely hurtfull, as alſo immoderate anger.

In the firſt four moneths ſhe ought not to lye with her husband, for that ſhakes and moves the fruite of her womb, and cauſes the flowers to deſcend; ſhe muſt alſo abſtain in the ſixth and eight; but in the ſeventh and ninth it is not denyed, and is thought to facilitate the delivery.

She ought alſo to keep her body ſoluble, which if it ſhould come of it ſelf, ſhe muſt take looſing ſyrups to help nature; Aſſoon as ever they perceive themſelves to be with child, they muſt lay a ſide their busks, and not ſtraighten themſelves any way, for feare of hurting the fruit of their womb, by not giving it its full liberty of growth.

## CHAP. VII.

### *How women ought to govern themſelves, in the time of their going with childe.*

FIrſt, that her breaſts, after her delivery, may not grow bigge, and ſwell over-much; as alſo to a void the danger of two much blood, which being converted into milke, may chance to curd and breed ſome diſeaſe in the breaſt: Therefore as ſoon as ſhe perceives her ſelfe with Precepts concerning the breaſts.

with child, let her cary about her neck, a ſmall neck-lace of gold, though ſome do more eſteem of a neck-lace of ſteel, or a little ingot of ſteel, to hang between the two breaſts: you may alſo foment the breaſts a quarter of an hour every morning, with the diſtilled waters of ſage, perwincle, or ground-Ivy, making them firſt luke warme: when the third or fourth moneth of her time is come, and that ſhe perceives the Infant begin to move, about which time the belly begins to ſwell, and to grow big, ſhe may ſwathe it with a linen ſwath-band, which ſhe may anoint with ſome convenient pommatum; this keeps the belly ſmooth, and from wrinkles, and from hanging down like a tripe.

Concerning the belly.

*She may uſe this liniment, or Pommatum.*

℞ the gall of a kidd, and of a ſow, of each ℥iij. capon greaſs and gooſe greaſs of each an ounce and an halfe; cut theſe into little peices, and melt them in an earthen diſh, putting therto as much water as will ſuffice to keep them from burning; then ſtraine it through a linen cloath, and afterwards having waſhed it in faire water, untill it be very white, add to it of the marrow of a redd deare, about an ounce, then waſh it againe in roſe water, or ſome other water of a good ſent, and anoint the ſwath-band therewith.

*Or*

*Or this,*

℞. of the greaſe of a dog, and the fat of mutton, which is about the kidnyes, of each two ounces; the fat of a whale, about an ounce; oyle of ſweet Almonds, about an ounce and a halfe; prepare the greaſes as above-ſaid, then mingle them with the other things, and waſh them in roſe water, as before.

Some women that are loath to greaſe their bellyes with theſe oyntments, doe carry the skin of a dog, or elſe the outward and thin pilling of a ſheeps skin; take the skin of a dog ready dreſt, for the making of gloves; waſh it a good many times in faire water firſt, and afterward in roſe water, then drye it in the ſhade, and moiſten it in the foreſaid oyles.

*Take this one more Liniment.*

℞. a quarter of a pound of freſh butter, well waſhed in faire Water; of roſe water, and of oyle of ſweet Almonds, an ounce; of the ſeed of a Whale, half an ounce; melt theſe altogether, and anoint the belly. Theſe oyntments are to be kept in a Galley-pot, covered over with roſe water.

The woman having attained the ninth moneth of her time, and ſtill continuing theſe oyntments, ſhe may now begin to uſe more exerciſe, walking gently before dinner, for the firſt twelve or fifteen dayes of that moneth; afterwards

wards she may use a more strong exercise, that is for the eight or ten next dayes. In the first days of this moneth it might not be unprofitable to be bathed in the following decoction, for the space of a quarter of an houre, and being afterwards put to bed, to let her selfe be well rubbed, and afterwards anoynted with some good oyntment all about the navill, along the *Os sacrum*, and the bone of the small guts, and all about her hips and thighs.

*You may use this Bath.*

℞ of Mallows, marsh-mallows, motherwort, of each two handfuls; roots of Lillies, three ounces, of Camomil and Melilot flowers, of each a good handful; the seed of Line, Quinces, and Fenugreek, of each an ounce; boyl all these in fair water to make a decoction, and for a half bath.

*You may use this Oyntment.*

℞ Hens grease, three ounces, the grease of a Duck, an ounce and an halfe, oyle of Linseed, an ounce and an half, fresh butter, two ounces; melt all these together, and then wash them well, either in pellitorie water, or in the water of mugwort, adding thereto two ounces of the muscilage of Marsh-mallows.

If the woman all her time doe complaine, that she feels little or no motion of the child, let her

her carry upon her navel this following quilt, which will give ſtrength to the Infant.

℞ powder of Roſes, red Corral, Gillow-flowers, of each three ounces and an half, ſeed of Angelica, two drams, Maſtick, a dram and an half, Ambergreaſe, two grains, Muſk, one grain; put all theſe in a ſack of fine Linen, and quilt them together for the uſe aforeſaid. Thus much is to be obſerved by women with childe, that are in health, and have no other diſeaſes hanging upon them: but of the other diſeaſes incident to women with childe, we ſhall take a time hereafter to treat.

SECT.

# SECT. IV.

## *Of the formation of the childe in the womb.*

### CHAP. I.

### *Of the mixture of the ſeed of both Sexes, as alſo of its ſubſtance and form.*

AFter that the womb, which is the Genital member of the Female Sex, hath received the ſeed of the Man, ſhe commixes alſo her own ſeed, ſo that there is now but one mixture made, of the ſeed of both ſexes.

Now of the next matter of the birth, there is a difference among the learned, which being unneceſſary for this place, we ſhall let go, and ſtick cloſe to them, who affirm, that the ſeeds of both ſexes, being confuſed in the womb, doth make up the firſt matter of the birth; ſo that if there were not a mixture of both ſeeds, it were impoſſible that any generation could be. Yet though there be of neceſſity a confuſion of both

both ſeeds, we deny not but that their qualities are different, for the ſeed of a man, exceeds the ſeed of a woman, both in thickneſs and heat, which is more cold and moiſt, and therefore more watry. Yet though they differ thus in quality, it is not to be denied, but that the ſeed of the woman, gives a mutual aſſiſtance to the ſeed of man, in the work of generation.

But it being unqueſtionable, that the menſtruous bloud is the matter of the womans ſeed, therfore that ye may know the original of it, it is to be underſtood, that the Menſtruous blood, is nothing elſ but an excrement of the third concoction, gathered together every moneth, and purged out: Which purgation being duly made, the woman is then in perfect health of body; but if they come not down according to their accuſtomed times, and ſeaſons, or do not come down at all, the woman neither can conceive, nor engender. Of the menſtruous bloud.

Thus the ſeeds of both ſexes meeting in the womb, and there mixing together, they are preſently encloſed in a little Tunicle, begot by the heat of the womb, and are there as it were, coagulated and curdled together.

CHAP.

## CHAP. II.

### *Of the three tunicles which the birth is wrapt in, in the womb.*

FIrſt, out of the extreme ſuperficies of the ſeed, by reaſon of the more watrie moiſture of the womans ſeed, a thin membrane is generated, which by reaſon of its moiſt qualitie, is dilated farther, being at firſt tranſparent, but after the birth comes forth, folded up together, and is called the ſecondines.

But of the ſuperfluous moiſture of theſe two tunicles, are begot two other tunicles, which defend the infant from being cloged with any ſuperfluities, as from the flowers retained, after conception, which ſerve neither for the nouriſhment, nor for the increaſe of the infant. Yet are they retained till the very time of the birth, at which time they are either let out, by the hand of the Midwife, or elſe burſting the ſecondine, wherein they are contained, they flow out of themſelves.

The ſecond tunicle is that which was anciently called Allancoides, wrapping about all the inferior parts, from the navel downward; this is full of folds and wrinkles; in which the urine, ſweat, and other ſharp humours, that diſtill from the infant, almoſt grown to maturity, are contained and kept to the time of delivery.

By

By this ſecond tunicle therefore the infant is delivered, and defended from thoſe humours, leaſt they ſhould either corrode, and hurt the tender skin of the Infant, or elſe any way defile and foul the Infant.

The third tunicle, with in all theſe, compaſſes the whole birth round about, defending it from all ſharp exterior humours, being very ſoft and tender.

## CHAP. III.

### *Of the true generation of the parts, and the increaſe of them, according to the ſeveral dayes and ſeaſons.*

After the womb hath received the Genital ſeed, and by its heat hath ſhut them both up, curdled and coagulated together, from the firſt to the ſeventh day are generated many fibres, bred by a hot motion, in which not long after, the liver, with its chief Organs, is firſt formed. Through which Organs, the vital ſpirit being ſent to the ſeed, within the tenth day forms, and diſtinguiſhes the chiefeſt members. This ſpirit is let in through certain veins of the ſecondine, through which the bloud flows in and out, of which the navel is generated. At the ſame time, in the clotted ſeed there do appear three white lumps, not unlike curdled milk, out of which ariſe the liver, the brain and the heart.

Preſently after this, a vein is directed through

the navel, to ſuck the thicker ſort of the bloud that remains in the ſeed, for the nouriſhment of the parts. This vein is two forked.

In the other branch of this vein is a certain bloud collected, out of which the liver is firſt framed; for the liver is nothing but a certain maſs of bloud, or bloud coagulated and hardened to a ſubſtance: and here you may ſee what a company of veines it hath, which ſerve both for the expulſive, and attractive faculty. In the other branch are generated thoſe textures of veins, with a dilatation of other veins, as alſo of the ſpleen and the guts in the lower part of the belly; by and by all the veins, like branches gathering into one trunk, toward the upper part of the liver, meet all in the concave or hollow vein. This trunk ſends other branches of veines, to conſtitute the Diaphragma, others it ſends into the upper part of the back-bone, ſeated about the Diaphragma, as alſo the lower parts, as far as the thighs.

The Liver framed.

Afterwards the heart with its veins, directed from the navel to that part of the ſeed and carried as far as the back-bone is formed.

The Heart formed.

Theſe veins ſuck the hotteſt and moſt ſubtile part of the bloud, out of which the heart is generated in the membrane of the heart, otherwiſe called the Pericardium, being by nature thick and fleſhie, according as the heat of the member requires. Now the hollow vein extending it ſelf, and piercing the interiour part of the right ſide of the heart, carries bloud thi-

ther

ther for the nouriſhment of the heart; from the ſame branch of this vein, in the ſame part of the heart ariſes another vein, called by ſome the *Gall vein*, becauſe it beats not with ſo quick a pulſe as the others do, ordained to ſend the moſt purely concocted bloud in the heart to the lungs, being encompaſſed with two tunicles, like Arteries. But in the concavity of the left part of the heart, ariſes a great beating vein, called the Aorta, diffuſing the vital ſpirit from the heart into all the beating veines in the body.

Under the ſaid vein, called the Aorta, in the concavity of the heart, there is another vein, called the veiny Artery, which was therefore framed to carry the cool air from the Lungs, to temper the great heat of the heart.

Now there being many veins, which running from the concavity of the heart, are inſerted into the Lungs, therefore by theſe veins the Lungs are alſo framed; for the vein which proceeds from the right concavity, produces a moſt ſubtile bloud, which is turned into the ſubſtance of the Lungs. By the great veins of the heart and liver, the *hollow vein*, and the Aorta is the whole breaſt generated, and after that the arms and legs in order.

Within the foreſaid time, is generated the laſt and chiefeſt part of this ſubſtance, that is to ſay, the brain, in the third little skin of this maſs, for the whole maſs of the ſeed being repleat with vital ſpirits, that vital ſpirit contracts great

part of the Genital moiſture into one certain hollowneſs, where the brain is formed; outwardly it is covered with a certain covering, which being baked and dried by the heat, is reduced into a bone, and ſo is the Cranium made.

Now the brain is ſo formed as to conceive, retain, and change the natures of all the vital ſpirits, whence are the beginnings of reaſon, and of all the ſences; for as out of the liver ariſe the veins, out of the heart ariſe the arteries, ſo out of the brain ariſe the nerves of a more ſoft and gentle nature, yet not hollow like veins, but ſolid. Theſe are the chiefeſt inſtruments of all the ſences, and by which all the motions of the ſences are made by the vital ſpirit.

After the nerves, is generated by the brain alſo the pith of the back-bone, which cannot be called marrow: for the marrow is a ſuperfluous ſubſtance begot out of the bloud, deſtined for the moiſtening, and for the ſtrenghthening of the bones: but the brain and pith of the back-bone take their beginning from the ſeed, being not deſtined for the nouriſhing or ſtrengthening of the members, but to conſtitute certain private and particular parts of the body, for the motion and uſe of the ſences, that all the other nerves may take their beginning thence; for from the pith of the back-bone, do ariſe many nerves, by which the body obtaines both ſence and motion.

Here is alſo to be noted, that out of the ſeed itſelf are generated griſtles, bones, tunicles, for the

the veins of the liver, the arteries of the heart, the brain with its nerves; beſides the tunicles and pannicles, and the other coverings which the infant is wrapt in. Now of the proper bloud of the birth, the fleſh is formed; and whatever parts are of a fleſhie ſubſtance; as the heart, the liver, and the lights. Then are all theſe nouriſhed by the menſtruous bloud, which is attracted through the veins of the navel. This is all diſtinctly done from the conception unto the eighteenth day of the firſt moneth, in all which time it is called ſeed. After which it receives the name of Birth.

## CHAP. IV.

### *Of the nouriſhment of the birth in the womb.*

WHile the birth remaines in the womb, it is cheriſhed up with blood, attracted through the navel, which is the reaſon that the flowers doe ceaſe alwayes in women, as ſoone as they have conceived.

Now this blood, preſently after conception, is diſtinguiſhed into three parts; the pureſt part of it is drawn by the child for the nouriſhment of its ſelfe; the ſecond, which is leſs pure and thin, the womb forces upwards to the breaſt, where it is turned into Milke.

The third and moſt impure part of the blood remains

remaines in the matrix, and comes away with the ſecondines, both in the birth, and after the Birth.

Now the infant being thus formed and perfected in the womb, for the firſt moneth ſends forth its Urine through the paſſages of the navel; but in the laſt month, that paſſage being ſhut up, through the privie members; yet notwithſtanding, while the Infant is in the womb, he voyds nothing out at the fundament, becauſe he hath taken no nouriſhment in at the mouth. After the fourty fifth day it receives life, and is then called an Infant.

Now though the infant hath by this time obtained ſence, yet doth he not move: He moſt commonly moves in twice the time that he was formed, and in thrice the ſpace after he began his motion, he haſtens into the world; as for example, if the Infant were formed in forty five dayes, it will move in ninetie, and be born the ninth month after that, and thus much of the formation and nouriſhment of the child in the womb.

CHAP.

## CHAP. V.

### *Of the condition of the Infant in the womb in the ſixth, ſeaventh, and eighth moneth.*

After the third and fourth moneth, the infant is nouriſhed with more plenty of nouriſhment, until the time of deliverie approach. Now you muſt obſerve that a childe born in the ſixth month, cannot live, by reaſon that it is not come to its juſt perfection; but if it be born in the ſeventh moneth it will very eaſily live, becauſe it is come to its full perfection. Now the reaſon why thoſe that are born in the eight moneth doe not live, when as thoſe which are born in the ſeventh doe, is plaine; for in the ſeventh moneth, the Infant ſtirs it ſelf, to come forth; ſo that if it have ſo much ſtrength, it eaſily performes its deſire, if not, it remaines in the womb, till it have gathered two months more ſtrength. After this motion of the ſeventh month, if it be not able to come forth, it changes it ſelf into another part of the womb, by which motion, it is ſo weakened, that if it ſhould be born in the eight moneth, it were impoſſible that it ſhould live, for it is weakened by a double motion, not only that of the ſeventh moneth, but alſo by that motion whereby it ſtrives to go forth in the eight moneth.

# SECT. IV.

## CHAP. I.

### *Of the ſituation of the child in the womb.*

COncerning the ſcituation of the child in the womb, it may be conſidered either generally, or ſpecially; ſpecially, either as it concerns the male, or the female.

The male is commonly ſcituated in the right ſide of the womb, the female in the left.

The general ſituation of the childe, either male or female, in the womb, is always the ſame. Which hath been obſerved and ſeen to be in this poſture, when the infant lies with his back and his buttocks, leaning againſt the back of the mother, the head enclined, and touching his breaſt with his chin; reſting his two hands upon his knees, his navel and his noſe between his two knees, with his two eyes upon his two thumbs; his legs folded backward, and touching his buttocks with each leg.

This figure is the moſt natural, as being leaſt ſubject to ſuffer any accident, being leſs inconvenient,

venient, and leſs troubleſome to the mother.

The moſt naturall form for the childe to come into the world, is when the head comes forward, the hands being ſtretched upon the hips.

The things which are the cauſes of a womans delivery, are three; firſt, the want of reſpiration and air, for the infant. The ſecond is the want of nouriſhment, of which when the infant finds a defect in his mothers womb, he is forced to ſeek it in another place. The third is the narrowneſs of the place where the infant lies, ſo that he is forced to ſeek room other-where, which makes him to break the membranes wherein he was contained, preſſing and conſtraining the mother by the ſharpneſs of thoſe waters, to do her duty for his releaſe. Now as ſome ſay, there are three ways or manners of childrens comming upon the earth; firſt, when the head comes foremoſt, and then the woman is eaſily delivered; the ſecond, when it comes forth a croſs, or one ſide, or the feet foremoſt, and then the woman ſuffers much, and either they both dye, or one of them. As for thoſe births which are unnatural, we ſhall in another place treat of them, and their remedies. In this combate, the infant and the mother ſuffer very much, by reaſon that woman is a creature delicate and timorous, and not patient, of much labour; or becauſe that women great with childe live a lazy and ſloathful life; and beſides that, many times they eat bad victuals, which encreaſe humours & ſuperfluous excrements, which

quantity

quantity of humours makes the woman to breath ſhort, which is a thing very troubleſome to the infant; for a woman that will expel the birth quickly, ought to keep her breath in, as much as ſhe can.

The third reaſon of the pain in womens travail, is by reaſon that the head of a childe is bigger, being compared to the members, then the head of any other creature, which makes a greater opening and dilaceration.

But the women that ſuffer moſt pain, are they who were not delivered before, having not been accuſtomed to the ſufferance of that labour; as alſo elderly women, by reaſon that the *bone* of the *pubes*, the *bone of the hip*, and the *Os ſacrum*, are not ſo eaſily ſeparated, the ligaments being more ſtrong and hard.

Now in the contention which the child makes to iſſue forth, the head comes firſt, by reaſon of the weight, being more heavy then the other members.

BRITISH MUSEUM

SECT.

# SECT. V.

## CHAP. I.

### *Of Midwifes.*

ALthough in theſe dayes there are many unskilful women that take upon them the knowledge of Midwifry, barely upon the priviledge of their age: yet there are many things which ought to be obſerved in a Midwife, that they are utterly wanting of. Let us therefore conſider of the things required in a midwife, in relation both to her perſon, and her manners: as for her age, ſhe ought to be neither too young, nor too old, in a good habite of body, and not ſubject to diſeaſes, not miſhapen in any parts of her body, peculiar in her habits and in her perſon; her hands muſt be ſmall, with her nailes pared cloſe, without any rings upon them, in the time of her duty, nor bracelets upon her wriſts; ſhe muſt be cheerfull, pleaſant, ſtrong, laborious, and uſed to travaile; it being required that ſhe ſhould be ſtirring Her Age.

Her manners. ſtirring at all hours, and abiding long time together with her patient.

For her manners, ſhe ought to be Courteous, ſober, chaſt, not repining, cholerick, arrogant, or covetous, nor apt to talke of what ſhe ſees done in the houſes where ſhe hath to doe.

Her Spirit. For her ſpirit, ſhe ought to be prudent, wary and cunning, oft times to uſe faire and flattering words.

She ought moreover to know, that God hath given to all things their beginnings, their Increaſings, their Eſtate of perfection, and declination: Therefore the ſaid Midwife, nor any of her aſſiſtants, muſt not do any thing raſhly, for to precipitate or haſten nature.

## CHAP. II.

### *What ought to be obſerved, when ſhe is nere the time of her lying downe.*

Of women near the time of their lying down. THe hour of the womans Lying down approaching, the woman with child ought to prepare her ſelf in this manner, ſhe muſt preſently call her midwife and aſſiſtance to her, it being requiſite to have them ſooner then later.

Her Bed. She ought to prepare a little bed, or couch, of a moderate hight, as well for the convenience of the midwife, as for the eaſe of herſelf, and others that ſhall be about her to aſſiſt her in her

her travell: This muſt be ſituated in a place convenient for people to paſs up and downe, neere the fire, and far from doors: It will be requiſite for her to have change of linen, as alſo a little cricket for her to reſt her feet on, having more force when her feet are bowed.

When ſhe findes her pains growing, it will be neceſſary for her to walke leiſurely up and down the chamber, afterwards ſhe may lie downe warme, and then riſe and walke againe, expecting the coming down of her waters, and the opening of the womb. For to keep herſelfe long a bed, is very troubleſome. Though when ſhe is a bedd, notwithſtanding that ſhe hath ſome certaine paines ſomtimes, yet ſhe may lie and reſt herſelfe, and now and then take a nap. By which meanes, both the mother and the Infant doe with greater ſtrength endure their ſucceeding hardſhip; beſides that, her waters do come downe better. If her travel be long, ſhe may take ſome broth or the yolk of a poched egg, with ſome bread, or a cup of wine, or diſtilled water; yet ſhe muſt have a care leſt ſhe overcharg her ſelf, either with meat or drink. In the time of travail what to do.

It is certain, that all women are not delivered alike; for ſome lie in their bed, others ſit in a chair, being ſupported and held up by others, or elſe reſting upon the ſide of the bed, or chair; others upon their knees, being upheld under their arms; but the beſt, and ſafeſt, is to lie in their beds; and for her good and convenient delivery, let the Midwife, and others, obſerve what follows.

Firſt,

Certain Rules.

First, the woman that is in travail, ought to be laid upon her back, her head being lifted up a little higher, with a pillow, having also a pillow under her reins to sustain her back; under her buttocks and *Os sacrum*, she must have a larger pillow, to raise them a little, and that her rump may be elevated; for a woman that lies low in those parts, can never be well delivered; for the avoiding of which, this scituation is very convenient. Her thighs and knees must be a good way separated the one from the other, with her legs bowed and drawn up toward her buttocks, the soles of her feet, and her heels, being fixed upon a boord, laid thwart the bed for that purpose.

Secondly, To some women they doe use a swath-band, four double, this swath-band must be a foot broad, or more; which being put under her reines, is to be held up streight, by two persons standing on each side, just at the time of her paines; both of them, at the same instant, heaving up both ends, with an exact evenness; for otherwise, it does more harme then good. It is also requisite, that two of her freinds should hold the upper part of her shoulders, that she may be able to force out the birth with more advantage; And it will not be amiss, for some of her friends to press the upper parts of her belly, so to thrust downe the infant, by little and a little, such a soft compression, will much facilitate the travel and give ease to the womans paines.

Thirdly,

Thirdly, As for the woman herſelfe ſhe muſt be of a good heart, and force her ſelfe by ſtriving as much as poſſible ſhe can, ſtopping her mouth, and keeping her breath, as if ſhe were doing the ordinary deeds of nature.

As for the collick, if it ſeize women in travaile, you may read the remedies in the following chapter.

## CHAP. III.

### *How to expell the Collick from women in Childbed.*

There are ſome women, who at the ſame inſtant that they are in travaile, are taken with fits of the collick, which is often cauſed by the crudities, and indigeſtions of the ſtomach, which doe torment women ſo extremely, that it exceeds the paine of their travaile; and while this paine laſts, a woman advances nothing toward the end of her travaile, the paine of travaile being hardly to be diſtinguiſhed from it.

For her eaſe therefore, the woman ought to take theſe remedies; two ounces of oyle of ſweet Almonds, with an ounce of Cinnamon-water, or elſe ſome wind diſpelling Glyſter, and if the firſt time ſuffice not, you may reiterate it; ſometimes fomentations, that are proper for the diſpelling of winde, are very neceſſary for this purpoſe.

CHAP.

## CHAP. IV.

### *How the Midwife may know when the pains of travail do seize a woman.*

WHen the woman begins to cry out, and hath sent for her Midwife, the first thing that the Midwife is to ask, is, when she did conceive? 2. Then is she to look diligently upon the belly of the woman, and to mark it well, for if she do behold the upper parts of the belly sunk and hollow, and the lower parts of the belly full and big, she may then conclude that the child is fallen down. 3. She ought then to ask her some questions concerning her pains; for if they be quick and strong, beginning at the reins, and sliding down all along the belly, without ending at the navel, but still falling down upon the groins, and inwardly at the bottom of the belly, below which is the interiour neck of the womb, these are certain signs that the woman begins to be in labour.

4. But for more certaintie, the midwife may put up her hand, being anointed first with fresh butter, and if she perceive the interior neck of the womb to dilate it selfe, tis a certaine signe that the paines of childbed are upon the woman, or if she perceive any thing to push forwards, her travaile is also undoubtable.

CHAP.

## CHAP. V.

### *Of the falling down of the waters, a good while before the woman travails.*

There are ſome women, who have their waters come from them, a long time before their travaile, ſometimes twelve days, ſometimes eight dayes, ſomtimes ſix, and ſometimes foure; though the ordinary time be not aboue three houres before her travaile: they remaining for the moſt part not above twenty four howers. This is cauſed by ſome ruptures of the membranes, where from the beginning of the formation of the child, the humour is contained, rather then by the abundance of humours; and therefore though awoman that hath abundance, and that the membranes containing them, are ſo ſtrong that they wil not breake ſuddaine, though the woman ſhall not travail till they breake, yet the midwife ought not to break them, but rather hold the woman over a veſſel of warme water, and alſo uſe ſome ſoftening linniment, to ſoften the membranes, that ſo the mother ſtraining the head or other member of the child, may breake them more eaſily.

But for thoſe women that have theſe evacuations ſo long before they travaile, they muſt refraine going into the aire, for feare of injuring themſelves, the paſſages being open;

for though the air cannot hinder the childe from coming forth, by reaſon of its weight, yet oft times getting within the ſecondine, it not onely ſtreightens the veſſels, and mouthes of the veines, that are at the bottom of the womb, but alſo cauſes ſeveral convulſions, to the great danger of the woman: but it is an eaſie thing to remedy theſe accidents, by keeping cloſe in her chamber, having alſo a ſpecial regard to diſtinguiſh, whether they be the waters of the birth, or any Hydropick humour of the Matrix.

## CHAP. VI.

### *What the Midwife ought to do in time of travaile.*

THe Midwife ſeeing the birth come naturally, the pains now coming thicker and thicker, the womb alſo opening to be delivered of its burthen, and the endeavours of the childe being ſeen to come forth; The Midwife muſt now encourage her patient, admoniſhing her to ſhut her mouth, and to hold her breath, and to ſtrein and endeavour with her lower parts; Neither ought the Midwife be too haſty, either to widen or force the paſſage of the Infant, or to break the membranes, but to ſtay till the

the membranes do burſt of their own accord.

And here is to be noted, the ignorance of some women, who for haſte to be gone to other women, do tear the membranes with their nail, to the danger, both of the woman, and of the childe, which then remains dry, without that moiſture which makes the paſſages ſlippery; which muſt of neceſſity augment the pain of the woman. Note.

When the head comes forth of the womb, the Midwife muſt take it gently between her two hands, and then when the pains increaſe, ſlipping down her hands under the arm-holes, gently drawing forth the Infant, yet ſtaying her hand always, but when the pains come upon the woman. This muſt be done with a very delicate and tender hand, leſt the child, by any rude or harſh handling, ſhould receive any deformed ſhape of body.

When the child is come into the world, which is commonly with his face downward, it muſt be ſuddenly turned upon his back, leſt it ſhould be ſtifled for want of air. Then let her cut the navel-ſtring, leaving the length of four fingers, tying it with a ſilk thread, as near the belly as may be: Which done, the childe if it be well, may be laid aſide, only care muſt be had, that the head and the ſtomach be well covered, and that nothing come upon his face.

## CHAP. VII.

### *How to draw forth the Secondines.*

THis childe being thus drawn forth, and in ſafety, the midwife muſt now apply her ſelfe to the drawing out of the ſecondines, which muſt be don by wagging and ſtirring them up and down, and then gently drawing them forth, cauſing the woman to take ſalt in both her hands, and to ſhut them cloſe, and then to blow in them, whereby you ſhall know whether they be broken or noe: it may be done alſo by cauſing her to put one finger in her mouth to provoke a deſire of vomiting, or elſe by ſtirring, as when ſhe is doing the ordinary deeds of nature, or as nature it ſelfe conſtrained her to doe, before the head of the child was come forth. All this muſt be don ſpeedily; yet if this be not ſufficient, ſhe may take the yolke of an egg raw, or ſhe may take a ſmall draught of raw elder-water, or you may cauſe her to ſmell to a peice of Aſſa Fœtida. If ſhe be troubled with winde collicks, or have taken cold, which oftentimes doth breed wind, which is a great hinderance to the comming forth of the ſecondines. The Midwife ought to chafe the womans belly with her hand, which does not only breake the wind, but cauſes the ſecondine to come downe. If this failes the midwife may with her hand di-

late

ate the exterior orifice of the womb, drawing it forth gently and by degrees.

## CHAP. VIII.

### *What may be given to a woman in travaile.*

In the first place hot and violent remedies are to be avoyded, but in cases of great necessitie; for it many times happens that they are the cause of dangerous fevers. Hot things to be avoyded.

Two other things are also very dangerovs to a woman in Travaile too much repletion, and too much emptines, for the stomack of a woman with child doth not digest her meat in so short a time as women that are not with child doe; Therfore the midwife ought to informe her self how long it was since she eat, and in what quantitie; and if it were long since she did eate, and that she grow feeble. they may give in the intermissions of her paines some warme cherishing and cordial broths, or the yolke of a potched egg. if her travaile endure long; then to strengthen her and comfort her, she may take a draught of Cinamon water, not exceeding an ounce, or at twice a dram of the confection of Alkermes; dissolved in two spoonfulls of Claret wine; and not more then one of these three things. For if they take too much, as is before said, it causes fevers, and heats the whole body, of which follows many inconveniences; for it stopps the purgations, of which many strange diseases ensue. As also emptines and fulnes.

## CHAP. IX.

### *How to put the Womb again in its place.*

SOme women newly brought to bed, are many times afflicted with greater paines, then those of their travaile, by reason that the womb is not well put into its place, or if it have, the swath-band being loose, it is apt to roule upwards in the belly. This happens to women that are not well purged after their deliverie; for remedie hereof, having put the matrix right into its place, roule up two linen swathes, pretty hard, bringing them also round the hipps; then take whites of eggs, beaten, and a dram of Pepper in pouder, which being spread upon Toe, is to be applyed warme to the navil; then let the bellie be well swathed; this is the only remedy to ease the paine.

## CHAP. X.

### *Against the extreme loss of blood, which happen to women, immediately after their delivery.*

THere are many women who immediately after their delivery, doe suffer great losse of blood, which proceeds from a great plenitude,

of

or fullneſs, or by reaſon that in their travaile, they took too many hot and corroſive medicines, or by ſtreining themſelves too hard, over-heated the blood, ſo that after travaile, it runs from them in great quantitie. To remedie this, the woman ought to take often a ſmall quantitie of wine, in a ſpoon, and if the weakneſs be much, let her mix half a dramme of Alkermes, with a draught of wine, and take care that ſhe be well ſwathed upward; for that preſſes downe and ſtreightens the veſſels, and hinders the violent flux: give her alſo the yolke of an egg to take, for that recalls the naturall heat to the ſtomach, which was diſperſed through the whole. It would be neceſſary alſo, to ſpread a long the reines of the woman, and all along the back-bone, by reaſon of the hollow veine, a napkin dipt in Oxicrat, or water mingled with vinigre. You may alſo lay upon each groin, a skeine of raw ſilk moiſtened in cold water. Take alſo of that well tempered earth, of which they make the floor of an oven, and ſteep it in ſtrong vinigre, then ſpread it upon a linnen cloath, and lay it upon the reines; this moderates the heat of the blood, and ſtoppes the violent flux of it. Great care muſt be alſo had, that all the while the Blood comes from her, ſhe do not ſleep, for many times they are taken away in that weakeneſs when the people thinke they doe not take their reſt, but when you ſee this great flux moderated, you may take away the aſtringent medicines by little and little, that ſo the blood

may ceaſe running by degrees, leſt any bloud ſhould be retained that may chance to doe miſcheife.

## CHAP. XI.

### *What is to be done to a woman, preſently after her delivery.*

PReſently after a woman is delivered if ſhe have had a ſore travail, they ought to caſt her into the skin of a ſheep flead alive, and put about her reins as hot as may be; Upon her belly alſo lay the skin of a Hare flead alive, having cut the throat of it afterwards, and rubbed the skin with the bloud, which is to be clapt as warm as may be to her belly.

This cloſes up the dilatations made by the birth, and chaſes from thoſe parts the ill and melancholly bloud. Theſe remedies are to be kept on two hours in Winter, and one hour in Summer.

After this ſwath the woman with a napkin about a quarter of a yard large, having before chafed the belly with oyl of St John's wort. Then raiſe up the Matrix with a linen cloth many times folded, then with a little pillow about a quarter of a yard long, cover her flanks, then uſe the ſwath, beginning a little above the hanches, yet rather higher then lower, winding it pretty tight. Lay alſo warm cloaths upon the

the nipples, letting alone thoſe remedies which are proper for the driving back of the milk, which are not ſo ſoon to be applied, for the body is now all in a commotion, and there is neither vein, nor artery which doth not beat, wherfore thoſe remedies that chaſe away the milk, being all diſſolving, therefore it is not proper to put ſuch medicines upon the breaſt during that commotion, for fear that thoſe medicines, ſhould make a ſtop of any thing hurtful in thoſe parts, and therefore it is better to give ten, or twelve hours for the bloud to ſettle in; as alſo for that which was caſt upon the Lungs by the agitation of travail, to diſtil down again into its place.

You may alſo make a reſtrictive of the white and yellow of an egg beaten togeiher, with an ounce of oyl of St John's wort, and an ounce of oyl of roſes, an ounce of roſe water, and an ounce of plantine water, beat all theſe together very well; in this you may dip a linen cloath folded double, and apply it without warming of it to the breaſts, this comforts and eaſes the pains of that part.

She muſt not ſleep preſently, but a matter of four hours after her delivery, you may give her ſome nouriſhing broth or caudle, and then if ſhe will ſhe may ſleep.

CHAP.

## CHAP. XII.

### *Of women that have a great deal of blood, and purge not, neither in their travail nor after.*

SOme women have great superfluity of blood, and yet purge not at all, neither in their travail, nor afterwards; to which if remedies be not applied, the women do run great hazards and dangers in their lying in, great suffocations of the matrix, and continual feavers; this may be remedied, being first enformed of their natural disposition afore they were with child; knowing that when they had their purgations, they had them in great quantity, and for a good while together, as also when they came, being a gross and thick blood; and therefore seeing that now they do not purge in great quantity, and that they have divers unquietnesses, weaknesses of the stomach, and pains of the head; wherefore you may give her in the morning, a little syrrup of Maiden-hair, and Hysop water mingled together, and syrrup of Wormwood, with White-wine, in their broths you may boyl Jacines and opening herbs, keeping the belly soluble with Glysters, they must eat no solid meat, she must be well chafed from the groines down to the very ankle-bone, alwayes stroaking and carrying the hand downward; bloud letting also

alſo in the foot in the morning is not amiſs, as alſo ſome fumigation, that Cleanſes the matrix, and draws downe the blood; yet care muſt be had, that theſe laſt remedies be not uſed before the Matrix be put into its place, for feare that theſe remedies ſhould draw it down too low, but about eight or ten days after the Matrix was put into its place; for cleanſing the matrix, you may uſe this receit.

Take Pellitory, Sanicle, Camomile, Melilot, greene Balm, red Balme, whit Mulleine, Mallowes, Marſh-mallowes, Betony, Margerum, Nipp, March, Violets, Mugwort, take of each a like quantitie, and cut them ſmall, and let them boyle in a new pot, with three pints of good white wine, let the woman take the fume of this receite three times in a day; if ſhe have any groſs blood in the matrix, it will undoubtedly bring it down: You may alſo chafe the womans belly with oyle of violets, this helpes the purgations being once diſſolved. The reaſon why this thick blood ſtayes in theſe partes, is, becauſe the woman having it before ſhe was with child, the heate of the womb when ſhe is with Child redoubling, thickens it more, ſo that when ſhe comes to lye down, it cannot flow, ſo that it is to be taken away as much as may be with the aforeſaid reaſons. Mollifying fomentations are alſo proper for this purpoſe, while the woman ſits over the fumigation.

CHAP.

## CHAP. XIII.

### *For those who have but a little blood.*

THose women that have but little bloud, ought not to live in their beds as those who have a great deal. They out to take good nourishment in a little quantity. As eggs well boyled in the shell in a morning: The juyce of Mutton and Veal squeezed out, and Mutton broth, and all these being mingled together, nourish very much, and make very good bloud, as also Pigeons, Partridg, Mutton, Quaile, and such other meats good for the stomach.

## CHAP. XIV.

### *What is to be done to the Infant.*

THe Midwife having tied up the Navel string, as is beforesaid, she ought next to cleanse the Infant not only in the face, but also over the whole body; anointing the groins, hips, buttocks, thighs, and joynts with oyl of sweet Almonds or fresh Butter, this makes the skin more firm, shuts up the pores of the skin, so that the exteriour air cannot come to hurt it, and besides this, it strengthens all the parts of the bodie.

It

It would not be amiſs to make a bath or decoction of Roſes and Sage in Wine, and with that to waſh the Infant every morning.

After the Infant is thus well anointed, and after that well dried and wrapped up, you may give to the Infant a little Sack and Suger in a ſpoon, or elſe the quantity of a peaſe bigneſs of Mithridate or Treacle diſſolved in wine, with a little Carduus water.

## CHAP. XV.

### *How to govern women in Child-bed.*

THere is great difference in the governing women, in Childbed, for ſhe that thinks to order, an ordinarie labouring, or countrie woman, like a perſon of qualitie, kills her; and ſhe that thinks to govern a perſon of qualitie like an ordinarie Countrie-woman, does the ſame to her: for the ſtomack and Conſtitution of the one is tender, and weake, and the Conſtitution and ſtomack of the other ſtrong, and luſtie; which will not be ſatiſfyed with ordinary viands, for if you give to one of theſe ſtrong ſtomachs preſently after their delivery, any ſtrong broth or eggs, or a draught of milke, are like mills that allways grind and empty as faſt as they pour in, and that that gives one woman, a Feaver,

a feaver, keeps another from it; and therfore women in Childbed are to be governed by their ſeveral conſtitutions. As for women that are delicate, and have been accuſtomed to live delicately, greater care muſt be taken of them, giving them meats that breed good nouriſhment, and do not clog the ſtomach, forbearing alſo to give her thoſe meats to which ſhe has too great a diſlike, agreeing to her humour, provided that the meats which ſhe loves be not hurtful, and giving her for the firſt eight days of her lying in, boyled meats rather then roſted, as gellies, &c. the juyce of Veal or Capon, but not mutton, it being too feveriſh, giving her to drink barly water, or elſe water boyled, wherein is boyled a dram of Cinamon to every pint, and two ounces of ſugar diſſolved, or if ſhe do not love ſugar, Coriander ſeed water, if ſhe drink wine, let it be two thirds of water to one third of wine, giving her in the morning White wine, and in the afternoon Claret, taking care of eating any thing that may breed any crudities, ſhe may alſo take at the diſcretion of thoſe about her, Almond milk now and then. There are ſome women that cannot be kept from ſleeping, and others that cannot ſleep at all. It will not be amiſs to give to thoſe that cannot ſleep, French barly water; the way to make it well, is to let it boyl well, and to take the broth without ſtraining it; neither ought it to be taken after the eight dayes are paſt, by reaſon that it nouriſhes exceedingly, and does not a little obſtruct the Liver.

CHAP.

## CHAP. XVI.

### *Of the bathings that a woman is to uſe for the firſt eight dayes of her lying in.*

TAke a good handful of old or new Chervil, and boyl it in a ſufficient quantity of water, then taking it from the fire, add to it a ſpoonful of Mel Roſatum, or hony of Roſes, this draws down the purgations, clenſes and heals the parts. The herb it ſelf may ſerve for a fomentation, to take away any inflamation. There are ſome that uſe milk to the purpoſe aforeſaid, affirming that it is a great aſſwager of the pain; but that having been proved by others, hath been obſerved rather to engender filth, then to be any way a clearer, by reaſon that the ſharp humour cauſes it to curdle.

## CHAP. XVII.

### *How a woman ought to govern her ſelf, in caſe a woman be to be delivered of two children.*

THe travaile of a woman bringing forth two Infants is more tedious, and it many times happens, that one of the children comes forth very well, and the other comes forth very ſcurvily

ſcurvily; And this is certain, that that which comes forth firſt, is always the ſtrongeſt, having the power to goe before the other, and to break the membranes that enveloped it. And ofttimes while the ſecond is born, the other remaines behinde wrapt in ſuch membranes as the former was, ſo that it remaines a good ſpace behind the other, ſomtimes two houres, and yet it hath bin very well borne. Now knowing that, that which came firſt was the ſtronger, it would not be amiſs to aſſiſt the other in coming forth, by breaking the membranes that contain the waters, and if that faile, by giving ſtrong Glyſters to excite the paine; which were it not many times done, the child would never be able to endure the paine of coming into the world, by reaſon of its extraordinary weaknes; which is ſo great ſomtimes, that the bone of the forehead is devided, and ſeparated down to the noſe; although the Infant being born, it joynes together againe, and the Infant does very well, which if it happen, you muſt have a great care, to bind ſome kind of ſoft pillow upon the place, that the aire may not enter in. If the ſecond Child come forth ill, you muſt not delay to breake the membranes, and to draw the Infant gently out by the feet, for having uſed all its endeavour to come forth, to keep it there, or to prolong the travaile any longer, is more dangerous then profitable; ſometimes two come ſo ſuddainely the one after the other, that there ſeemes to be but one delivetie of both, there being but a little

membrane

membrane that ſeparates them; In this caſe holding the firſt, you muſt cut the navel ſtring, and bind it about, and tye it about the Hipp, while they draw forth the other Infant, which by a longer ſtay would be much weakened.

## CHAP. XVIII.

### *Of the danger that a woman hath, to purge her ſelfe for the firſt days of her lying in.*

IT is an ordinary thing for women that lye in, by reaſon of their bed, to looſe the benefit of their bellyes, which hinders the evacuation of their milke, which cauſes fevers, by ſending groſſ vapours to the head, yet can they not bee freed by any purgation taken in at the mouth, but it would be much to the purpoſe to take pertinent Glifters which hinder the foreſaid evills, cauſing their breaſts to be come full, and to be come ſtiff, taking them as ocaſion requires, once in two or three dayes. There are ſome unſkilfull women, that not underſtanding the ill conſequences which may follow, who doe give Sene to women in the firſt days of their lying in; of which ſome have bin very ill, and others have dyed. For nature is now weakned, by the travaile, and while it is labouring to reſtore the body to its former Eſtate, is not to be diſturbed with violent purgations. And therfore

Glisters are always most proper. Neither are laxative broths, nor the broth of prunes, nor baked apples fasting. for these things doe engender wind, but rather some good suppositories would be more usefull.

## CHAP. XIX.

### *Of the second washing for women.*

THe second washing for women ought to be with Province roses, put into little baggs and boyld in water and wine, of each a like proportion ; and this to be done for the second eight dayes.

## CHAP. XX.

### *What is to be done to Infants, assoon as they are born.*

IT is an approved Maxime, that as soon as a child is born, you ought to give it a spoonfull of pure wine, for that assists and helps the child to regaine its spirits. Another advantage is this, that the wine cutts the flegme which the Child has in its throat ; besides the spirits of the wind rising up to the head comforts, and strengthens it ; and them less subject to be drunk ; it hinders them also from the Epilepsie, which proceeds

proceeds from the debilitie of the braine.

This being done, and the Mother fully delivered, you must tie the Navel Veine with a silk well twisted, and many times doubled, and if there be any blood in the veine, you must be sure to emptie it, for feare if it should be left, it should turne into corruption; then it must be well dryed with pouder of rotten wood: you must tye it, two fingers breadth from the belly, and leave it long, three fingers breadths above the tying place, and if it be fatt, you must close it over and aboue, that the veine may be well closed, then wind the string twice about it, knitting as many knots; but if the child be come before its time, you need not tye it so strong for feare of cutting it with the silke; but if the Navel veine be full of water and wind, you ought then, having tyed it one time and wrapt a linnen cloth about the end of it, which is still to be held upward, to uncover it againe, about half an hour after, and then to tye it and wrap it about againe, still keeping the end up for feare, that if the veine were not fully closed, that there might be some danger in the bleeding.

Some people give to the Infant Treacle dissolved in wine; but this must be don warily in a very small quantitie, and that not commonly neither.

The Infant must be washed with water and wine luke warm, to clense it; After wards wash the face, as also chafe the throate, the Armes

and hands, with oyle of wallnuts, drawn without fire, which ſome ſay will keep them from ſunburning, then put one hand upon the bone of the forehead, and another upon the bone called the Coronal bone, and ſoftly cloſe up the gap which was made during the time of travaile, cloſing alſo the ſuture one againſt another exactly; then gently put your finger under the tongue, to ſee if the Infant have the ſtring or no; and if it have, it may be clipt away with the poynt of a paire of ſharp cizers, without danger There are ſome that thinke they can ſhape the head and noſe of a child as if it were of wax. But let ſuch take notice that have flat noſed Children, rather to let the noſe alone then by ſqueezing and cloſing it too much, to render the noſe obſtructed; for that compreſſing the Griſtles of the noſe renders the child liable either to ſpeake alway in the noſe, or to loſe his ſmelling, There are ſome children that are borne with their noſes awry, for the help of which you may with your finger moyſtened in fair water, gently ſtroke the noſe, but lay no ſtreſs upon it. That happens by reaſon that the noſe of the child lights upon ſome bone of the Mother as it was comming into the world.

CHAP.

## CHAP. XXI.

### *Of the laſt waſhing for Women.*

THe laſt waſhing for women, is to be for four days, with Province Roſes boyled in wine and Myrrh-water.

## CHAP. XXII.

### *Of an Aſtringent for Women when they ſhall have occaſion.*

TAke Galls, Cypreſſ nuts, and Pomgranate flowers, Roch Alome, of each two ounces, Province Roſes, four ounces, knot graſs, a good Handfull; the rind of Caſſia, the rind of Pomegranates, Scarlet berries, of each three ounces, the nature or ſperm of a whale, one ounce, Roſe water, Myrrh water, and Burnet water, of each an ounce and a half, wine and water of a ſmiths forge, of each four ounces, and a half, then make two little baggs about a quarter of a yard long, and half a quarter of a yard broad, then boyle all theſe in the foreſaid water in a new pot, uſing the baggs one after another as occaſion ſerveth.

## CHAP. XXIII.

### *To make ſearcloaths for women.*

TAke white wax, halfe a pound, the ſperme of a whale, and venice turpentine, well waſhed in roſe water, plantaine water, of each an ounce and a halfe, then melt all theſe together, then mingle with them an ounce of venice white Lead, then order you your cloth as you pleaſe, making ſome for the bellie, and ſome for the nipples, having firſt rubbed it over with oyle of Acorns, or the ſperme of a whale.

## CHAP. XXIV.

### *To cleanſe a woman before ſhe riſes.*

TAke bitter Almonds and peel them, make thereof a paſt with the powder of Iris and the yolk of eggs, and put it in a little bagg of Tammy, and temper it within the bag, with black wine luke-warm, and afterwards uſe it upon the places where the ſear-clothes have been laid, then waſh the places with black wine mingled with orange flower.

## CHAP. XXV.

### How a woman lying in of her first child, may avoid the gripings of her belly.

THere are some women lying in of their first childe, who are troubled much with gripings in the belly, and these women commonly endure pains when their terms come down, by reason of the smalness of the veins which conveigh the bloud into the Matrix; such women have griping in their bellies when they lie in of their first child, which other women are not troubled with, by reason that they have larger vessels; yet although they have them not in their first lying in, it would not be amiss to use some proper remedies, that so they may be never troubled with them, which if they receive not at their first lying in, they will be uncapable of receiving them ever after, for though they may take remedies afterwards to lessen the pain, yet they can never cure it wholly.

Now that which is ordinarily done to women as soon as ever they are brought to bed, is to give them two ounces of oyl of sweet Almonds drawn without fire, with two ounces of syrrup of Maiden-hair; tis true this is good to make her purgations part away, but not to remedy the griping.

Some there are that do take two drops of the bloud which comes out of the navel-ſtring of the Infant, and give it mingled to the woman in the foreſaid ſyrrups, though there is much fault to be found with this by reaſon of the naſtineſs of it.

Others do boyl a white Chicken, in the which they do put two ounces of Sugar, a dram of fine Cinamon, half a Nutmeg grated, two or three Dates, five or ſix Cloves, the Fowl being boyled, you may put into it a ſmall quantity of Claret, then boyl it altogether again, letting it boyl till the Fowl be well ſoaked, then ſtrain it, and give it to the woman as ſoon as ſhe is laid down; for want of a white Hen you may take a Pigeon, or a red Partridg for want of either; Onely take heed to give her this if ſhe be feveriſh, becauſe it is ſomething hot.

The ſeed of Savory taken in warm broth is very good, and it is alſo very good for thoſe that have the collick.

### *The Queen of France her Receit.*

Take a dram of the root of the greater Conſound or Comfrey, one of the kernels of peaches, nutmegs, of each two ſcruples, yellow Amber half a dram, Amber-greaſe half a ſcruple, mingle all this together and give it to the woman as ſoon as ſhe is laid down, the quantity of a dram mingled in white wine, or if the woman be feveriſh, in ſome good warm broth.

CHAP.

## CHAP. XXVI.

### *Certain precepts hindering the delay and difficulty of bringing forth.*

BEing now come to talke of the impediments of the birth, you muſt know that the birth is hindered by a twofold manner, the one natural, the other not natural; of the unnatural we ſhall treat of in its place; for the natural take theſe following directions: But in the firſt place let the Midwife be very skilful, that ſhe may decline as much as in her lies, all the impediments that may be avoided.

If the birth be hindred by the drineſs and straightneſs of the neck of the womb, take a little beaten Hellebore or Pepper, and blow it into the noſtrils of the mother. Her mouth muſt be held cloſe, her breath kept in, and ſneeſing muſt be provoked as much as may be, whereby the ſpirits being forced to the lower parts, may be the more available to force down the childe. You may alſo give her Shepherds-purſe dried in a little broth or wine; alſo a little quantity of hony mingled with twice as much luke-warm water and give her, will not be unprofitable. The milk alſo of another woman mixt with maiden-hair, and applied warm to the navel. She may take alſo oyl of Laurel in wine or warm broth, two grains of Pepper being taken

ken inwardly do not only force out the birth but alſo drive out the ſecondines.

This is alſo an excellent remedy againſt a difficult travail.

Take Trochiſchs of Myrrh one dram, grains of Saffron ten, Cinnamon one ſcruple, mingle all this with two ounces of Peny-royal water, and give it the woman to drink.

Let her drink it warm, and let her go to her bed for an hour, till ſhe finds the operation of the drink moving her to her labours. If this profit, and that the Infant coming with his head foremoſt ſtick in the womb, you may uſe theſe pills, of which ſhe may take ſeven and then reſt.

℞ Gum, Bdelium, Myrrh, Savin-ſeed, Liquid Storax, or Stacte Caſtor, Agaric, of each half a ſcruple, Diagridium ſix grains, mingle all theſe with Caſſia extracted, as much as ſuffices, and make up pils about the bigneſs of peaſe.

You may alſo uſe a peſſary, as long and as thick as your finger, of pure wool, which muſt be covered over with ſilk, and dipt in the juice of Rue, where Scammony hath been diſſolved, and ſo uſed. If theſe things prove without effect, ſhe may uſe this enſuing bath above her belly.

Take of the roote and herb Althea ſix handfulls, Mallows, Camomile, Melilot, Parſley, of each foure handfulls, Line-ſeed, and ſeed of fenugreek, of each two pound, Lavender, and Laurel leaves, of each two handfulls.

Let all theſe things be boyled to gether in

water

water, where in the woman is to ſit, or elſe to have thoſe parts well wet and moiſtened with ſponges, which being done, and the woman well dryed with warme cloaths, let her be brought to the bed, and anointed with this oyntment.

Take oyle of ſweet Almonds, Hens fatt, Oyle of Lillies, Muſcilage of Althœa, of each halfe an ounce. Mingle all theſe with as much wax as is ſufficient, and make an oyntment: This being done give her this little doſs.

Take two yolkes of egges, and boyle them in cold wine, then mix with them theſe ſpices, Cinnamon half an ounce, rind of Caſſia two drams, or you may leave out the Caſſia, and inſtead thereof put in the more Cinnamon, ſaffron halfe aſcruple, Savine, Betonie, Venus-haire, Dittanie, Fenugreeke, Lawrel berries, Mint, of each one dram: The bone of the heart of a Hart, Pearles prepared, Mingle all theſe with ſugar, and make a thick pouder and give it.

If the ſecondine come before the child, and hinder the egreſs of the child, it is to be cut of, and this following peſſarie to be put up.

Take Marſh-mallows, with the rootes two handfulls, Mother wort one handfull, Rue one ounce and a half, Fenugreek, Line-ſeed, of each an ounce, ten figgs, make of theſe a decoction, with as much water as is ſufficient, and when you have ſtreined it, add this to it, Oyle of Lillies, oyle of Line, of each two ounces, Muſk one graine: In this decoction, let the peſſary be dipt and put up; ſhe may afterwards uſe this electuarie. ℞

℞ Take Myrrh, Caſtor, Calamum, Arom, of each two dramms, Cinamon, one ounce, ſaffron halfe a ſcruple, Mace, Savin, of eace a ſcruple clarified hony halfe a pound, you may alſo make an electuary with the water of Thyme, and mother worte, wherein have bin boyled Fenugreek, Line-ſeed, Graines of Iuniper, of each one ſpoonful.

Now after that the woman hath bin weakned with theſe impediments, you may give her in broth, ſpecies Lœtificans, or Manus Chriſti or Diamargaritonꝝ

## CHAP. XXVII.

### *How the ſecondines are to be haſtened out.*

THe ſecondines afore that the Infant is born, may be many ways hindred; firſt by the debilitie or weaknes of the Matrix, which happens by the frequent motion and endeavouring of the Infant, as alſo by reaſon of the difficultie of the birth, or by reaſon that the womb doth not continue diſtended, or becauſe it is many times ſtreightened, by which the womb is ſo weakned, that by its own force it is not able to expell the ſecondines; Beſides the ſecondines may inwardly ſtick cloſe to the womb, which happens many times through the abundance of ſuperfluous humors that are retained in the matrix, by reaſon of which Glutinous humors, the ſecondines ſtick to the

the Matrix. Theſe are noe way elſe to be pulled away, but by the hand of the midwife. Thirdly, the ſecondines are hard to come away, if all the waters come away with the Infant, for then the ſecondines being left without moiſture, cannot come away by reaſon of the drines of the womb, beſides that the Matrix and the neck of the womb are rougher by reaſon of the drineſs therof. for theſe waters render the way ſlipperie and eaſie both for the infant and for the ſecondines, which being ſlipped away, the womb is to be anoynted with juices and oyles. Fourthly, when the mouth of the Matrix, by reaſon of the paines of child-bearing, ſwells, as often happens, unleſs there be a provident care taken to prevent it. Fiftly, when the neck, of the Matrix is ſtreighter and more cloſe, and for that reaſon fat women travaile with much more difficultie, Therefore when the ſecondines doe make any extraordinary ſtay, the Midwife is to uſe all her endeavour to make way for them. for that retention cauſes ſuffocation and divers other evils, for being long detained, they putrifie and cauſe an evil ſmell, which aſcending up to the heart, liver, ſtomach, diaphragma, and ſo to the brain, cauſe pains in the head and lungs, ſhortneſs of breath, faintneſs, cold ſweats; ſo that there is great danger, and alſo Apoplexies, and Epilepſies, are not a little to be feared. Now in all the time of their ſtay, the women are to be refreſhed with convenient food, to add ſtrength to them, giving them ſometimes the yolks of eggs

boyled

boyled in old wine with Sugar, and ſprinkled over with Saffron and Cinamon, or ſome broth made of Capon or Hen, ſeaſoned with Cinamon and Saffron; It may not be amiſs to make certain perfumes for the woman to receive up into her womb, made of Saffron, Caſtor, Myrrh annd Cinamon, of each the quantity of a bean, and care muſt be had that the fume paſs no further then the Matrix, and this may be done till the fume of theſe ſpices ſhall ceaſe. After this a little ſneezing-pouder is to be put into her noſtrils compoſed of Hellebore or ſuch like, the woman ſhutting her mouth hard, and keeping her breath; If theſe things prevail not, give her this following potion,

℞ Trochiſch of Myrrh ℥j. ten grains of Saffron, one ſcruple of Cinamon, Peny-royal two ounces; make of this one draught and give her; after ſhe hath taken this and reſted a little while, let a peſſary of Hellebore and Opoponax, wrapt up in pure wool, be thruſt up into the neck of the womb. This will certainly bring down the ſeconds, for it is of ſo great vertue, that it is efficacious in expelling the child which is dead, together with the ſeconds.

Take Mallows, Hollihock, Wormwood, Mugwort, Calamint, Origanum, an. M. j. make a bath, and let her ſit therein up to the navel, and ſtroke ever downwards with her hands, and give her inwardly Myrrh ℈ i j. Cinamon pouder'd in Nutmeg-water or wine, or drink Calamint or Penyroyal in wine.

Neither

Neither will it be amiſs to anoint the Matrix
th the oyntment called Baſilicon, if this doth
thing avail toward the bringing down of the
monds, and that the woman is in great danger
her life, then with the conſent of her huſ-
nd and kinred, give her ſeven of the follow-
g Pils, which being taken, let her lie ſtill, till
e vertue of them do provoke new pains; for
y are of ſo great vertue alſo, that they do
pel the dead child, together with the ſecon-
nes; yet herein it will not be amiſs to conſult
e skilful Phyſician.

*The Pills are theſe.*

℞ Of Caſtor, Myrrh, Liquid ſtorax, of each
ſcruple, the bark of Cinamon, or Caſſia, and
rthwort, of each half a ſcruple, Agaric half
ounce, Diagridion ſix grains, Saffron, Siler of
e mountain, Savin, of each three graines,
Thebaic Opium, Aſſa fætida, of each one grain,
ingle all theſe with as much extracted Caſſia
s is ſufficient, and make of them certain Pils as
g as peaſe, and give them to the woman in a
all quantity of Peny-royal-water. It may be
lſo expedient to apply this enſuing plaſter.

℞ one part of Coloquintida boyled in water,
nd as much of the juce of Rue, with theſe min-
gle Line-ſeed, Fenugreek, Barley of meal, of
ach a ſpoonful, let them all boyl together, and
he plaſter made of theſe muſt be laid upon all
hat part, from the navel to the privities.

CHAP.

## CHAP. XXVIII.

### *Of Cases of Extremity, and first, what is to be done to a woman, who in her travail is accompanied with a flux of bloud, and with convulsions.*

IN the first place, great care must be had as to the situation of the woman: The woman in this case must be laid cross her bed where she must be held by some one that hath strength, that she may not slide or move her self in the operations of the Chirurgion. Her thighes must be held hard and wide abroad, with her leggs bent backwards towards her hipps, and her head leaning upon a bolster the reines of her back, and her Crupper, being alittle elevated with certaine pillows put under neath her thighes; besides this she must be well covered with linnen cloaths, laid upon her stomacke belly and thighes, to defend her from the cold and wind: Being thus situated, the Chirurgion ought to putt up his hand, being first well opened, with in the neck of the womb, to remove all those clotts of blood, which may lie there to obstruct the passages of the blood. He may then trye if the interior neck of the womb be sufficiently dilated, that he may put in his hand and move the Infant, if it be needfull; which must be done as gently and with as little violence as may be, he must anoynt it on all parts with

with sweet butter, or good Pomatum, and so opening it by little and a little, he may put his hand quite in; and if the waters are not yet come downe, he may without any difficultie let them forth, and then at the same instant, if the Infant Come with the head forwards, he shall gently turn it, to find out the feet and when he hath found one of them, he shall gently draw it forth, and immediately tye a riband about it with a knott hanging downe ward, then let him put it in a gaine, suffering part of the riband to hang out, that he may more easily be able to find out the other foot, which he shall quickly doe, by thrusting up his hand a long the thigh of the Infant; when he hath found it he shall take the other foot, and draw them both togeather at an even length, giving the woman now and then some leisure to breath; but urging her still to streine her selfe when she feeles the paines coming on her, then shall the Chirurgion or midwife take a fine linnen cloath, and wrap about the thighs of the child, least by taking it naked, his fingers should slip, in that manner drawing it forth, till it appeare all come forth, observing still that the belly and the face be still kept downward.

Now if the woman have a flux of bloud, and that the neck of the Matrix be open, the Chirurgion ought then to consider, whether the Infant or the secondine come forth first of all, for it oftentimes happens, that the secondines passing toward the mouth of the Matrix, do so

ſtop and obſtruct it that they do not give leave for the childe or the waters to come forth, ſo that ſome perceiving that ſoftneſs, are preſently of opinion that the mouth of the womb is not open. But this the Midwife or Chirurgion may eaſily diſcern by thruſting up the middle finger as high as may be, and feeling therewith the circumference of the neck of the womb, by which they wil ſoon perceive whether the womb be dilated or no, and whether it be the ſecondines that preſent themſelves. Now when it is found to be the ſecondines, and that they cannot eaſily come forth, the Midwife may with her two fingers widen the paſſage, that he may have thereby the liberty to put up his hand, and ſeek for the Infant. Now if the ſecondines are not placed in the middle, they muſt be turned a little, as quickly as may be, that you may more conveniently ſeek for the feet of the Infant, to draw it forth as we have ſaid.

In ſuch a caſe as this, all care muſt be had that nothing be broken, and that every thing be brought out whole, for ſo though the woman ſhould dye, the Midwife or the Chirurgion would be blameleſs.

If the ſecondines come firſt, the beſt way is to deliver the woman withall the expedition that may be, by reaſon of the great fluxes of blood that will follow by reaſon that the veins are openedbut here are two things to be conſidered the firſt is whether the ſecondines are much or little come forth; if they are but little advanced,

they

they muſt be put back with care and diligence and if the head of the child appeare firſt it muſt be guided directly toward the neck of the womb; as in the moſt naturall birth, but if there appear any difficulty in the birth, by reaſon of the weakneſs either of the childe or of the mother, then the moſt convenient way will be to ſeek for the feet, as we have ſaid before.

Another thing to be obſerved is, that if the ſecondine be ſo far advanced that they cannot be put back, and that the childe follows it cloſe, then are the ſecondines to be pulled away with all the care and expedition that can be, and to be laid aſide without cutting the entrail that cleaves to them, for by that you may be guided to the Infant, which whether it be alive or dead, it is to be pulled out by the feet with as much care and quickneſs as may be; though it is not to be done but in caſes of great neceſſity, for otherwiſe the ſecondines ought to come laſt.

Of the child dead in the mothers belly.

If the childe be dead in the womb of the mother, the woman is then to be ſituated in the ſame poſture, as when ſhe is troubled with a flux of blond.

If it preſent it ſelfe dead, with the head formoſt, and that ther is little or no hope that the woman may be delivered without aſſiſtance, and that her ſtrength begins to faile her, the moſt certaine and ſafe way is to put up the hand, for the Chirurgion muſt then ſlide up his left hand being hollowed, as when a man ſtrives to hold water in it, cauſing it to ſlide in the neck of the

womb, along the lower part thereof toward th
feet, and that betweene the head of the Infan
and the neck of the Matrix, and having thu
opened the womb with his left hand, he sha
with his right put up his hook above his le
hand, between the head of the child, and th
flat of his hand, and fix it in the bone of the tem
ples, toward the eare, or else in the hollow o
the eye, or in the Occipital bone, keeping hi
left hand still in its place; after this gently mov
ing and stirring the head with his left hand, wit
his right hand holding the hook well fixed, h
shall draw the child forth by degrees, exhortin
the woman all the while to force and streine he
selfe with all her power; and then is the be
time to draw forth the child, when the paine
shall seize her; now if it happen that he loos
his hold in one place, the danger is nothing, so
he hath the libertie to fix his instrument better i
another place. The head being thus draw
forth, he must with all speed that may be, slip hi
hands down the childs armeholes, to draw forth
his shoulders, and the rest of his body: In th
meane while it will be requisite to give th
woman a small draught of wine, or a Tost sop
in wine or Hipocras.

Another way. If after these Medicines following adhibited,
the child make no hast into the world, but lyes
unmoved in the womb, then you may proceed to
instruments after another manner. First of all,
as soone as the woman is brought to the bed, let
her take this following potion hot, and abstaine
from

m all other meat, and remaine quiet for the ce of an houre or two, till ſhe feele the power l efficacy of the medicine.

℞. Seven cut Figs, Fenugreek, Motherwort- d and Rue, of each two drams, Water of Pe- royal and mother wort, of each ſix ounces, gle all theſe to the conſumption of half, ſtrein em and to the ſtraining add Trochiſchs of yrrh one dram, three graines of Saffron, Suger much as is ſufficient; make one draught of s, and ſpice it with a little Cinamon.

After ſhe hath reſted a little upon this, let her gin return to her travel, at what time certain erfumes muſt be made ready of Trochiſchs, mpoſed of theſe following ſpices, to be caſt the coals, and ſo uſed as that the perfume y onely come to the Matrix, and no fur- er.

Take Caſtor, Sulphur, Galbanum, Opoponax, geons dung, Aſſa-fætida, of each half a dram, ngle all theſe with the juyce of Rue, and make Trochiſch of them in the form of a filberd.

If theſe produce no effect, you may uſe this llowing Emplaſter.

Take Galbanum an ounce and a half, Colo- nthis without the grains two drams, the juyces f Rue and Motherwort, new Wax, as much of ch as is ſufficient, of each make a plaſter. Let is be ſpread upon a cloth to reach from the vel to the privities, and in breadth to both the ides, which ſhe may keep on for the ſpace of an our or two. A peſſary may be alſo conveni-

ent, made of Wooll, and closed over with silk and then moistned in the following decoction.

Take of Round birth-wort brought from France, Savin and Colocynthis, with grains Staves acre, black Ellebore, of each half a dram bruise these together and make a pessary, with as much of the juyce of Rue as is sufficient.

But now if all these things avail not, and that the Midwife is not able to dilate the passage for the infant, then you must have recourse to the Chirurgion; To which purpose she is to be placed in a seat, so that she may turn her crupper as much from the back of the chair as may be drawing up her legs as close as she can, but spreading her hips abroad as much as may be. Or else if it seem more commodious, she may be laid upon the bed, with her head downwards with her buttocks raised, and her thighs drawn up as much as can be, then you may go to work either with your *speculum matricis*, or his Apertory, so that the womb being sufficiently widened by the help of these instruments, the birth may be drawn out by the hands of the Chirurgion, together with the seconds, if possible may be. The womb must then be washed and anointed, the woman then must be laid in her bed, and wel comforted with spices, as also with some comfortable meat and drink. This course must be taken with all dead infants, and also with moles and secondines, which are hindered in their coming forth naturally.

If

If by these Instruments the womb cannot be sufficiently widned for the egress of theinfants, there are yet other Instruments, by which the womb may be widened with dammage to the mother, and birth be brought forth, such as are *Drakes bil*, and the *long Pincers*, by which the womb is not only widened, but the birth taken hold of by them for the more forcible drawing it forth.

If there be any swelling, or inflation, or concrete bloud gathered together in the preputium of the Matrix, under the skin, those tumours either before or after the birth, where the matter appears thinnest and ripest, the midwife may cut with a pen knife and squeeze out the matter; anoynting it afterwards often with a pessary dipt in oyl of roses until it be whole.

If it happen that the child be swollen in the womb, in any part of it, by reason of wind or any watrie humor, yet if it be alive, such meanes are to be used, as may be least to the detriment of the child and of the mother; but if it be dead, in what ever part those humours be, either in the brest arms or legs, the midwife may then put up her hand, and with a little knife for that purpose, cut the swollen, that by letting out of the wind or humour, the child may grow less, and be brought forth with less difficultie.

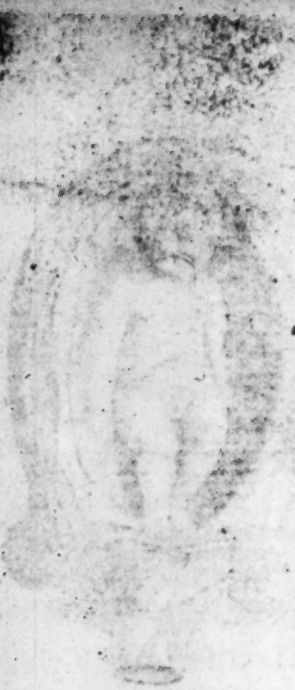
Many times it happens that the child comes into the world with the feet formost; and the hands dilating themselves from the hipps. In this case the midwife ought to be well furnished

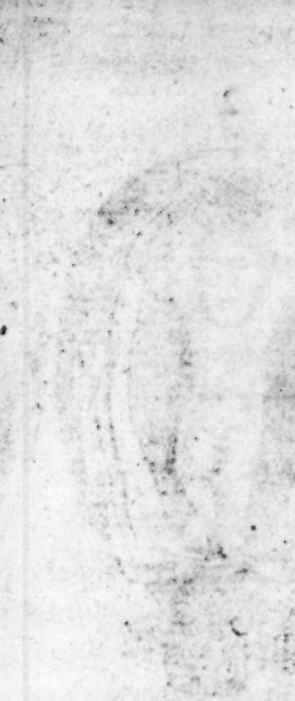
with oyntments, helping the egreſs of the Infant, by anointing and ſtroking it, leaſt it be carried backward. Having alſo a great care to take hold of both the armes of the Infant, and keep them cloſe to the hipps, that the child may come forth after its own manner. If by reaſon of this deduction of the armes, from the ſids of the Infant, and the narrowneſs of the Matrix, it ſo happen that the child cannot make a total egreſs, the womb of the woman, and the Infant it ſelf and child, are to be well anointed, ſneezing powders being adminiſtred to the woman, to helpe her endeavours, the womb is alſo to be preſſed hard with both hands, that the child make no retirement back, but may ſtill move forward.

It happens ſometimes that the child comes forward with its feet, with the armes not cloſe to its ſides, but extended above its head; which when it comes to paſs, the midwife is by no means to receive this birth, unleſs the child be very ſmall, and the Matrix ſo wide, that it may afford an eaſie paſſage to the child; yet may ſhe not then receive it, till ſhe hath well anoynted both the child and the Matrix. But it would be much more ſafe and convenient, for both the child and the Mother, to put back the child into the womb, and bring it to its naturall forme, which may be done in this manner; the woman muſt lye on her back upon her bed, with her head downward, and her buttocks a little elevated, which being done, the midwife ſhall gently

compreſs

3
2
1
6
5
4





BRITISH MUSEUM

compreſs the belly of the woman toward the Midwife, thereby to put back the Infant into the womb. But above all things let her take a care that ſhe turn the face of the child toward the back of the mother, raiſing up the thighs and buttocks of the child, toward the navel of the mother, to bring the child to a more legitimate and natural production.

If the child happen to come forth but with one foot, the arme being extended along the ſides, with the other foot turned backward; the woman is inſtantly to be brought to her bed, and laid in the ſame poſture as we have before told you, and then is the other foot which came forth firſt, to be put back into the womb; which being done, let the woman rock her ſelf from one ſide of the bed to the other; (lying alwayes with her head low and her buttocks rais'd) till ſhe apprehend the child to be turned, upon which ſhe may immediately expect her pains with all the aſſiſtance that may be given; and in the mean while to be comforted as much as may be with cordial potions, and wholſome medicines.

If the child lie athwart

Many times it happens that the child lies athwart, and fals upon its ſide, which when it comes to paſs, the mother is not to be urged to her labour, neither is the birth to be expected after that manner, for it is impoſſible that the child ſhould be ſo born without ſome converſion; and therefore the Midwife is to do all ſhe can to reduce it to a more natural form

form of birth, by moving the buttocks, and ſteering the head to the paſſage; if this ſucceed not, let her trie by often rocking the woman to and fro, to bring the child to its natural form of being born.

The fifth unnatural form.

If it happen that the childe haſten to the birth, with the legs and arms diſtorted, the Midwife ought not to haſten the woman, but immediately caſt her on her bed, where ſhe may direct the woman to roul her ſelf to and fro; or elſe ſhe may gently ſtroak the womb of the woman, as ſhe lies till ſhe have reduced the Infant to a better poſture; If this profit not, the Midwife muſt take the legs and cloſe them together, then if ſhe can ſhe muſt get her hand about the armes of the child, and in the ſafeſt way ſhe can direct it to its coming forth: though it be the ſafeſt way to turn the Infant in the womb, and by that means compoſe it to the natural birth.

The ſixth form.

If the infant come into the world with both knees forward, with the hands hanging down upon the thighs. The Midwife may then put up both the knees, upward, till the feet happen to come forward, and then with her left hand let her take hold of the feet, and keep her right hand about the ſides of the childe, and in that poſture endeavour the birth of the child; but if that ſucceed not, let the woman, as is ſaid before, be brought to her bed, and there wallow from ſide to ſide, till ſhe have moved the childe into a better poſture.

But

9

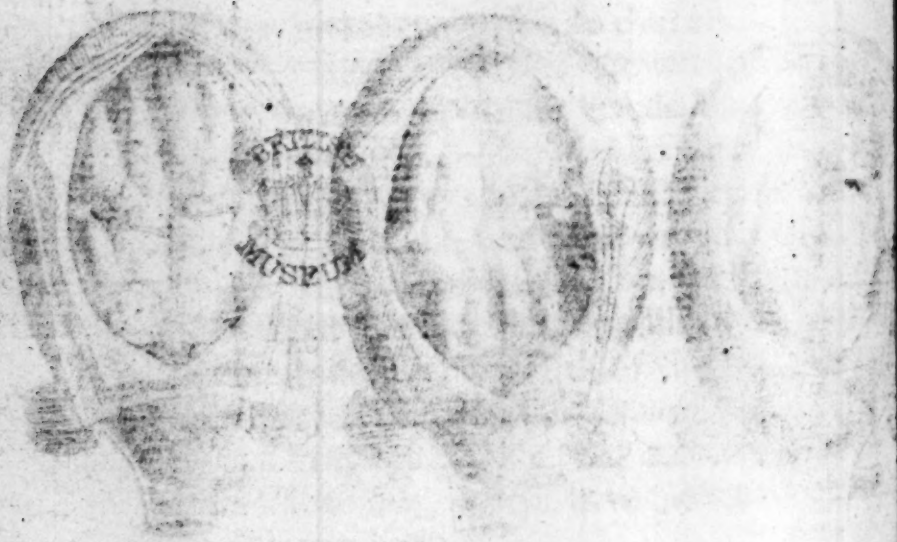
8

7

12

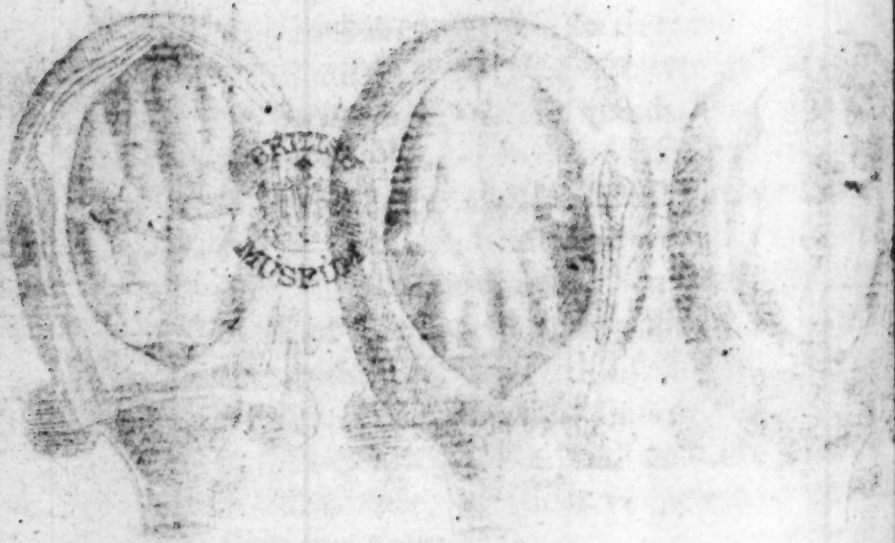
11

10


FIELD
MUSEUM

But when it happens that the child haſtens forwards with on arme extended upon the thigh, and the other ſtretched over the head, the feet being ſtretched out at length in the womb, the Midwife may by no means receive the childe in this poſture, but muſt lay her patient upon the bed, as we have ſaid before; then muſt the womans belly be gently preſſed backward, that the infant may retire into the womb, and if it give not backward of its own accord, the Midwife may with her hand gently thruſt back the ſhoulder, and bring the arm that was ſtretched back to its right place. Of the ſeventh form.

The moſt dangerous of all thoſe that we have ſpoken of is this, and therefore the Midwife muſt take great care to put back the Infant in this caſe into the womb: firſt of all therefore anoint well her hands, as alſo the womb of the woman, then if ſhe can let her thruſt in her hand near the armes of the Infant, and ſo move the ſhoulders that the infant may fall back into the womb; and then to bring it to the natural form, let her thruſt up her other hand, and reduce the armes of the infant to the ſides of it; If this ſucceed not, the woman muſt be laid on her bed, and after a little reſt, ſhe muſt be ordered as before we have ſaid: If this avail not, ſhe muſt be brought back to her ſeat, as we have before rehearſed; then muſt her womb, by the help of thoſe women that aſſiſt her, be gently preſt downward, and on both ſides, while the Midwife having anointed the matrix, and both the armes The eight form.


GRIZZLY
MUSEUM

But when it happens that the child haſtens forwards with on arme extended upon the thigh, and the other ſtretched over the head, the feet being ſtretched out at length in the womb, the Midwife may by no means receive the childe in this poſture, but muſt lay her patient upon the bed, as we have ſaid before; then muſt the womans belly be gently preſſed backward, that the infant may retire into the womb, and if it give not backward of its own accord, the Midwife may with her hand gently thruſt back the ſhoulder, and bring the arm that was ſtretched back to its right place. Of the ſeventh form.

The moſt dangerous of all thoſe that we have ſpoken of is this, and therefore the Midwife muſt take great care to put back the Infant in this caſe into the womb: firſt of all therefore anoint well her hands, as alſo the womb of the woman, then if ſhe can let her thruſt in her hand near the armes of the Infant, and ſo move the ſhoulders that the infant may fall back into the womb; and then to bring it to the natural form, let her thruſt up her other hand, and reduce the armes of the infant to the ſides of it; If this ſucceed not, the woman muſt be laid on her bed, and after a little reſt, ſhe muſt be ordered as before we have ſaid: If this avail not, ſhe muſt be brought back to her ſeat, as we have before rehearſed; then muſt her womb, by the help of thoſe women that aſſiſt her, be gently preſt downward, and on both ſides, while the Midwife having anointed the matrix, and both the armes The eight form.

armes of the Infant, joyns them as close together as she can, and in that manner receives the Infant. And there is the lesse danger in this form if the Midwife be diligent and the child slender.

The ninth form. If the Infant thrust it self forwards with the buttocks formost, the Midwife must put her hand well anointed, and so by heaving up and putting back the buttocks, strive to turn the head to the passage. Yet overmuch haste must not be made, lest the Infant should fall back into some worse posture; and therefore if it cannot be turned by putting up the hand, the woman must be brought to her bed, and ordered as we have often said before, comfortable things being conveniently ministred to her.

The tenth form. If the child come forward, with the neck bowed and the shoulders forward, with the hands and feet stretched upwards; in this case the Midwife must carefully move the shoulders backward, that she may be able to bring the head forwards, which may be easily done, for the shoulders being removed, the head will soon appear foremost, yet if this suffice not, the woman must be laid on her back upon the bed, and ordered according to the former precepts.

The eleventh form When the Infant thrusts forth the hands and feet formost, care must be had to avoid the danger of this mishapen posture, and therfore the midwife must strive by removing the feet, to lay hold on the head; and as much as in her lyes, to direct it to the passage; the hands are also to

be

be removed, unleſs of their own accords they fall down to the ſides. If by this means it cannot be done, the former precepts of converting the child are to be obſerved.

Sometimes it happens that the childe ſtrives to force its paſſage in this poſture which is very dangerous. Firſt of all therefore, let the midwife anoynt her hands well, and the womb of the woman, which being done let her put up her hand, and ſeek for the armes of the child, which when ſhe hath found, let her hold them faſt till ſhe hath hold of the head alſo, which ſhe muſt with all her ſkill endeavour to bring formoſt, then let her remove the hands of the Infant, and fix them upon the ſides of the Infant. Yet if this doe not availe, it will be the ſafeſt way to lay the woman on her bed, and to proceed according to the former precepts, to trye if by that delay ſhe may have the more advantage to proceed as before. The 12th form.

The ſame method which is to be obſerved in ſingle birth, is alſo to be obſerved in caſe of twins or of triple birth: for as the ſingle birth, hath but one naturall way, and many unnaturall formes, ſo is it with the birth of more children; and therfore when it happens, that when twins appeare coming into the world according to the naturall forme, the midwife muſt obſerve to receive that firſt which is neareſt the paſſage, yet be ſure not to let go the other, leſt it ſhould fall back into the womb, and tumble into ſome other forme, but the one being born, immediatly The 13th form.

to

to receive the other; this birth is the more eaſie in the natural form, becauſe the firſt child wider the paſſage for the latter, but in unnatural birth there is moſt difficulty in the paſſage of the ſecond child. care muſt be alſo had in the birth o twins, that the ſecondines be maturely brough forth, leaſt the womb being delivered of its bur den ſhould fall, and the ſecondine by that meane be delayed to the damage of the woman i childbed.

The fourteenth form.

If there be twins in the womb, and one o them endeavour to come forth with the hea formoſt, and the other with the feet; Firſt of a the Midwife muſt conſider which of the two th woman may be delivered of with moſt expedi on; if the head of the one be leſs forward then the feet of the ſecond, it will be moſt convenien to draw that forth by the feet, turning the head of the other a little to the other ſide, and that being delivered, ſhe muſt preſently lay hold o the head of that which is within, and direct it juſt to the paſſage of the womb; which may be done with more eaſe, by reaſon of the gap which the formoſt hath made.

If it happen that in drawing forth the firſt by the feet, that the other chang its ſituation, the midwife may then draw forth the other by the feet, as ſhe did the firſt; and if the head of the firſt be more forward, then muſt ſhe put back the feet of the firſt, and receive that which comes with the head formoſt.

If

if both of them preſs together to the paſſage
the womb, the midwife muſt take great care;
therfore ſhe muſt put up her hand to ſee
which of them is moſt forward, as alſo to try
ether it be not ſome monſtrous conception,
two heads upon one body, or two bodies
ed in one, either at the ſhoulders, or at the
which may be known, if ſhe put up her
gently between the two heads as high as
can, and if ſhe find that they are twins, ſhe
gently put the one to one ſide, to make
for the paſſage of the other, which is moſt
ced, which muſt be directed juſt to the
of the womb, having a great care that
do not change the ſituation of the ſecond;
ſhe feeles the pains of the mother coming
, ſhe muſt by all means bring forward the
, that ſhe would receive, ſtill keeping the
back, with two or three fingers of the
hand: and thus having delivered the firſt,
the ſecond be not well ſituated, ſhe muſt bring
head to the neck of the womb, where it
find the paſſage open to it, by the delivery
the firſt.

Now leſt the firſt childe ſhould be in danger
its life, you muſt take it from the mother,
carefully tie up the navel ſtring, as is for-
ly mentioned, & alſo bind again with a large
long fillet, that part of the navel which is faſt
the ſecondines, that they may be the more
ſily found. Then the ſecond child being born,
Midwife muſt ſee if there be not two ſecon-
dines,

dines, for by reaſon of the ſhortneſs of the gature, it may have happened to retire b againe, to the damage of the woman; and th fore the ſecondines muſt be haſtened forth ſoon as may be, leaſt the womb ſho cloſe.

If the two Infants have but one body, t better way is to turn the head upwards, and draw it forth by the feet, then by the hea taking care when you come to the hipps, draw it forth as quick as may be.

The fifteenth form.

The ſecond forme of the unnaturall birth very dangerous, and therfore requires the gr ter care of the midwife. Firſt therfore, let h well anoynt the womb of the woman, that t paſſage may be more ſlipperie, which be done, let her take hold of the hands of one the Infants, and keeping them cloſe to the ſid direct the head to the orifice of the wom that being born, let her proceed in the ſa manner toward the other. If ſhe cannot come take hold of either of the Infants armes, ſ muſt bring the woman againe to her bed, a trye if by the foreſaid Agitation of her bo the infants may be Brought to a more con nient forme of delivery.

CHA

## CHAP. XXIX.

### *Of ordering the woman after she is delivered.*

IN the first place she must keep a temperate dyet, having a great care not to over fill her self after so great an evacuation; and indeed her dyet must be like that of wounded persons; neither are the tales of Nurses to be beleived, who exhort them to fill after so great an emptiness, telling them that the loss of bloud must be restored; for these are meer fooleries; for as for that blood which she hath lost, it is but unnecessary blood, such as is usually kept for the space of nine months, which to voyd, is much conducing to her health: besides their nourishment for the first days, must be but slender, for feare of falling into a fever; besides the abundance of milke which it would bring into the breast, where it might be in danger of curdling, or apostematizing, and therfore for the first five days, let her use broths, Panadas, potched eggs, Gellies, abstaining from flesh, or french Barly. In the Morning, broth will be expedient; at dinner, broth or eggs or Panada; and at supper, the same, with some Gellies for her second courses. If she intend to nourse her childe, she may feed more plentifully; and drinke some Barly-water where in some coriaders or fennell seed may be put.

dines, for by reaſon of the ſhortneſs of the gature, it may have happened to retire ba againe, to the damage of the woman; and the fore the ſecondines muſt be haſtened forth ſoon as may be, leaſt the womb ſhou cloſe.

If the two Infants have but one body, t better way is to turn the head upwards, and draw it forth by the feet, then by the head taking care when you come to the hipps, draw it forth as quick as may be.

The fifteenth form.

The ſecond forme of the unnaturall birth very dangerous, and therfore requires the gre ter care of the midwife. Firſt therfore, let h well anoynt the womb of the woman, that t paſſage may be more ſlipperie, which bei done, let her take hold of the hands of one the Infants, and keeping them cloſe to the ſide direct the head to the orifice of the womb that being born, let her proceed in the ſam manner toward the other. If ſhe cannot come take hold of either of the Infants armes; ſh muſt bring the woman againe to her bed, an trye if by the foreſaid Agitation of her body the infants may be Brought to a more conve nient forme of delivery.

CHAP

## CHAP. XXIX.

### *Of ordering the woman after she is delivered.*

IN the first place she must keep a temperate dyet, having a great care not to over fill her self after so great an evacuation; and indeed her dyet must be like that of wounded persons; neither are the tales of Nurses to be believed, who exhort them to fill after so great an emptiness, telling them that the loss of bloud must be restored; for these are meer fooleries; for as for that blood which she hath lost, it is but unnecessary blood, such as is usually kept for the space of nine months, which to voyd, is much conducing to her health: besides their nourishment for the first days, must be but slender, for feare of falling into a fever; besides the abundance of milke which it would bring into the breast, where it might be in danger of curdling, or apostematizing, and therfore for the first five days, let her use broths, Panadas, potched eggs, Gellies, abstaining from flesh, or french Barly. In the Morning, broth will be expedient; at dinner, broth or eggs or Panada; and at supper, the same, with some Gellies for her second courses. If she intend to nourse her childe, she may feed more plentifully; and drinke some Barly-water where in some coriaanders or fennell seed may be put.

In Italie the persons of most account doe use this water. Take two Capons, the fethers being well pulled of, and the bowels wholly taken out, which you shall boyl in a glaz'd earthen pot, in a sufficient quantitie of water till they be halfe boyled then must they be taken out of the pot, together with the broth, and being cutt to peices are to be put into a Lembick in manner following.

℞. Bugloss, Borache and Time, two good handfulls, and with that cover the bottome of the shell, then lay upon that a row of flesh, then upon that a ranck of leaf gold, with a dram of powder of pearles, and upon that pover the broth, let all this be distilled in Balneo Mariæ, drawing forth a pint at a time, which you shall reiterate as often as you have any thing left, to give to the woman in child-bed, for the space of ten or twelve dayes. This water must be drawn six weeks or two months before it be used; If the woman be not troubled with a fever, let her drinke a little white wine or Claret, with twice as much hot water; If she haue a mind to drink between meales or at night, it may be convenient to give her some syrrup of maidenhaire, or any other syrrup that is not astringent, with a little boyled water. After the suspition of fever, or heat of her brests is over, she may be nourished more plentifully, and you may give her, together with her broth, some other meat, as Pullet, Capon, Pigeon, Mutton or Veale, boyled. After the eight day is past; at what time

ne the Womb is well purged and discharged, it ill be expedient to give her cold meat in greater antitie, that she may be enabled to gaine. ength; during all this time, she must rest very et, and be free from all manner of disturb- ; she must sleep as little in the day time as y be. If she goe not well to the stoole, she y have some such kind of Glyster as this. . of mallows, Marshmallows, and Pelitory the wall, an. one handfull, Flowers of amomile, and Melilot, of each a small handfull, niseeds and Fenell seeds, of each two ounces, ile these in the decoction of a wethers head, e of this three quartaries and dissolve in m of course suger and common hony, of each o ounces, new fresh butter three ounces; this make a Glister, and if occasion serve, add this an ounce of Catholicon.

*What is to be done to the Breast, Belly, and lower parts of the Woman in child-bed.*

N the first place you may lay the skin of a hare or sheep for the space of four or five owers, which being taken away, you may then noynt it with this following oyntment, and en lay a linnen towell all over her belly and ipps, which must be continued on for the first ven days, looking after and turning every orning.

*The Oyntment may be this.*

℞ the oyl of ſweet Almonds, Camomil and Hipericon, an. one ounce and a half, Spermaceti two ounces, Goats fat one ounce, oyle of Myrtles halfe an ounce, melt all theſe and make an oyntment to anoynt the belly, Now before the cere cloath be put on, you muſt apply a little plaiſter of Galbanum, about the bigneſs of two or three fingers to the navel, in the middle of which may be put two or three graines of civet, yet ſo as that the woman may not perceive the ſent of it. The cere cloth may be this.

℞. White wax four ounces, Pomatum without muſk, Calfes greaſs, of each an ounce, Spermaceti an ounce and a half, oyle of Hipericon and ſweet Almonds, of each one ounce, Venice Turpentine, waſhed in Pellitory water, halfe an ounce, melt theſe in Balneo Mariæ, and ſpread them upon a cloath about the bigneſs of the belly, and when it is coole apply it.

The next care is to be had of the breſts, upon theſe ſome put round cere cloths made thus, take ſix ounces of new wax, oyle of Myrtle, roſes and hony of Narbon, of each two ounces, melt theſe all togethet, and make a cere cloth; Let them have holes in the middle for the nipples to goe through.

*This oyntment is also very good to keep the milke from clotting.*

℞. Oyntment of Populion one ounce, *Galens* refrigerating oyntment half an ounce, oyle of roses six dramms, vinegar a small quantitie, melt them together and make an oyntment.

*This fomentation is also much commended.*

℞. Fennel, Parsely, Petroselinum, Mallows, Althea, of each a small handfull, Laurel and Camomile flowers, of each half a handfull, boyle these according to art, and make a fomentation for the nipples. After this fomentation, anoynt them with oleum rosatum omphacium, and then apply this following plaister.

℞. Venice Turpentine foure ounces, well washed in strong wine and rose water, adding to it two whole eggs, and a scruple of saffron, with as much wax as is sufficient, spread this upon a linnen cloth, and apply it: as for the lower parts, for the three first dayes, they are to be fomented with a certaine fomentation of milke, where in hath bin boyled a few roses, some chervil, and a little plantaine. From the next day to the eight day, you may use this bath; wine and water, of each half a pint, red roses, and flowers of Hipericon, of each two handfulls, Agrimony one handfull, make of this a decoction; after bathing once or twice lay this follow-

ing oyntment along the lipps of the privitie upon a linnen cloth.

℞ Oyle of Hipericon two ounces, Sperma ceti an ounce and a halfe, a little white wax, m all theſe together melt them and make an oyn ment.

After the eight dayes are paſt, you may la upon her belly this following plaiſter.

℞. Oyle of Hipericon, Camomile, and an ſeeds, of each one ounce, oyle of Maſtick, a ounce and a half, oyle of myrtles ſix dramm Spermaceti two ounces, the fat of the reines of goat an ounce and a half, Dears ſuet one ounc of this make an oyntment to anoynt the belly o the woman in childbed, and then apply this fo lowing plaiſter.

℞. Oyle of myrtles, and Hypericon, of eac an ounce and a halfe, oyle of Nippo one ounce Venice Turpentine, waſhed in water of Mothe wort, four ounces, melt all theſe together an put them upon a hempen cloath, that may cove all the belly, and lett her weare it the ſpace o eight dayes.

Theſe fifteen days being paſt, for the ſpac of eight days more, you may lay upon her bell and her hipps, this following plaiſters.

℞. Oyle of Maſtick, myrtles, Iaſmine, an Quinces, of each an ounce and a halfe, oyle o Atornes two ounces, ſpermaceti one ounce Venice Turpentine, waſhed in Plantaine water half an ounce, wax ſix ounces, melt all thes together, adding powder of Maſtick, and

illam an. halfe an ounce, florentine, Orrice one ounce, ſpread all theſe upon a hempen cloath, and lay it on her belly, to be kept there the ſpace of eight or ten dayes; for the lower this fomentation may be needfull.

℞. Leaves of Plantaine, Mulleine, Centinody and Horſtaile, an. one handful, Cypreſs leaves handfull and a halfe, of the rind of Pomgranates, cypreſs nuts; and Pomgranate flowers, of each halfe an ounce, red roſes, Camomil and Melilot, of each a handfull, roch Alum two ounces, calamus aromaticus, and florentine Orrice, of each three drams, Gilliflowers one dram, make of theſe two ſacks, and boyle them in like quantities of ſower wine, and ſmiths water, for the exteriour mouth of the neck of the womb.

## *Of the choice of a good Nurſe.*

THe choice of a good Nurſe is very important, and therefore you muſt firſt look upon her aſpect, and ſee whether her ſight be no way imperfect, as whether ſhe be ſquint-eyed, or have a down-caſt look; you muſt have a ſpecial care that ſhe be not red hair'd, for their milk is extreamly hot; ſee moreover whether her teeth be ſound and white and well ſet, know whether ſhe come of parents that have been troubled with the conſumption; and if ſhe have not, nor be exſumptive herſelf, you may judg of her ſtomach, and whether ſhe be ſubject to

catarrhs; you must also take heed that she send no stinking breath, either from her mouth or nostrils, for that corrupts the Lungs of the Infant. Enquire whether neither she nor any of her kindred have been troubled with leprosie by reason that it is very contagious, or with the Epilepsie or Falling-sickness. And therefore those women that either cannot, or will not nurse their own children, must make use of such women as are most fit to the humour they would have the child to be of, for the nurse is now to be the second mother of the child, from whom the Infants draws all her conditions, be they good be they bad; and it is often seen that children do partake more of the conditions of the Nurse then the Mother, and therefore care must be taken, that the Nurse be good conditioned, good teeth, brown hair, of a healthy generation, that neither she nor her husband may have had the French disease, that she be not peevish nor cholerick, that she have milk in abundance, and a good fleshy breast, that her breast be not over-fleshy, that she be not too fat, and above all, that she be not of too amorous a humour, and desirous to be with her husband, for that is perfect venome to the milk.

### *What is to be done in the extream pains of the childe.*

IF a child have extream throws presently after it be born, you must rub it with Pelitory and fresh

fresh butter, or Spinach, or else with Hogs grease, and apply it upon the navel, having first great care that it be not too hot. Or else make a little cake of eggs and oyl of nuts, and apply in the very same place; if this avail not, give it a little Glyster of milk, the yolke of an egge and a little Sugar, this easeth the pain of the intestines.

*What is to be done with those children that are troubled with flegme.*

THere are some children born of ill constitution'd women, or else of women that have not used good nourishment in the time of their being with child, who are very full of flegme, these you must lay upon one side, and sometimes upon the other; for if you lay them upon their backs, you may perchance choak them; you must be sure to keep their bellies soluble, causing them to void that bloud kept in the entrails from the time of their being in the womb, by giving it a little suppository of black soap well rubbed in fresh butter, to take away the Acrimony of it, then give it a spoonful of syrrup of violets; this causes the flegm to pass down; if you perceive that the Infant hath not much heat, you may mix with it half the quantity of oyl of sweet Almonds, and half of the syrrup of violets, and continue it, stroaking the stomach and the belly of the Infant with fresh butter, every time that they undress him.

That

*That which ought to be done to children, that have their cods full of wind.*

WHen Infants have their cods full of wind ye muſt examin whether it be with wind or water; if it be water, by rubbing and chafing the ſkin with freſh butter, the waters will ſweat out; if it be wind, the children muſt be ſtirred and ſwung gently, mingling in their drinke the decoction of aniſeeds.

## How to take away the canker from the mouths of Infants.

THere have been known certaine children which have been nouriſhed with cold milk, which hath bin thick and in great quantity, which a few days after its birth, hath heated the mouth of the infant in ſuch a faſhion, that it cauſed a white canker, which preſently poſſeſſed the tongue, palate, the gums, the throat, and all the mouth, whereupon it was taken with a fever, and it could no longer ſuck, all the aſſiſtance that could be was ſtill applyed, and when no other medicine did avayle, there was found one, a particular remedie, which was, half a handfull of ſage, a handfull of cherveil, bruſed a little, and boyled in a ſufficient quantitie of water, a bout a dozen ſeethings, to which you muſt add a ſpoonfull of vinegre, when you have ſtreined it, you muſt put to it an ounce of mel roſatum,

then

then you must have alittle hooked stick, with a little peice of scarlet tyed at the end, then putting the water in a sawcer, dip the end of the stick where the scarlet is tyed, and then rub the place affected gently, and you shall find the canker to asswage by little and a little.

### *What is to be done to children whose intestines are fallen.*

THere are a great many infants whose great gut fals, which is a thing very easily remedyed at the beginning, and therfore you must put it up againe, first, lay the child with his head lowermost, then you must have a thick cushion, soaked in smiths water, then you must have an emplaister made of the roots of great Consound scraped, and put upon it as an oyntment, then looking to it every day, taking care that it ete but little, and never unbind him but as hee lyes, lest the gut tumble down againe, and so the cure be delayed, as the child grows big the hole lessens, and the Intestine grows big. This is an experienced way.

### *To make an oyntment to strengthen the thighs and leggs of a child, and make him goe.*

TAke Sage, Marjoram, Dwarfe, Elder. bruise them a good while together till you have beaten out a good deale of juice, then put it into a glass viol, till it be full, and stop up the hole,

hole, with paſt and round the ſides alſo, put the ſaid paſt, put it then in an oven to bake as long as a good bigg loafe, then draw it forth and ſuffer it to coole, then breake the paſt which is round the viol, breake the bottle and keep up that which is with in, which you ſhall find turned to an oyntment, and when you would uſe it, you muſt add to it ſome of the marrow of the hooſe of an oxe, melting it all together, and when you have ſo done, you muſt rub the hinder part of the leggs and thighs of the child. This hath been done to a child whom a famous Phyſitian, after three yeares having in hand, gave over, ſaying, that it would never goe.

*Of the relaxations of the Matrix, and the cauſe.*

There are many cauſes of the relaxation of the Matrix, the one proceeding from great fluxes which fal down upon the ligaments thereof, cauſing them to wax looſe; Others come to this diſeaſe by ſome falls, others by reaſon of carring in their womb too great burdens, others by ſtreining themſelves in travaile before their time, and becauſe the orifice of the womb is not open; ſomtimes, and very often; by reaſon of the midwifes, who putting up their hands into the womb, teare downe they know not what, which is often times apart of the Matrix, to the bottom of which the ſecondines adhere, drawing down part of the womb. which they take to be the ſecondines, which is often times brought

alſo

to a worſe condition, when the unskilfull women force her to the remedies, for bringing down the ſecondines, as holding bayſalt in her hand, ſtreining to vomit, and the like. For remedie wherof, all theſe relaxation of the matrix, by the ſame remedies, except thoſe which are occaſioned by ſtrong fluxes, for in this caſe other remedies are not ſufficient, being that you are to take away the cauſe of thoſe defluxions, before you can proceed to the cure of the relaxation. Among the reſt I will relate one that hath been found very profitable and experienced, which is this aſtringent. Take Gall nuts, Cypreſs nuts, and Pomegranate flowers, Roche Alum, of each two ounces, Province Roſes four ounces, Centinode, a good big handfull, the rind of Caſſia, the rind of Pomegranates, Scarlet Graines, of each three ounces, the nature of a whale, one ounce, Myrrh water, roſe water, and ſloe water an ounce and a half, thick wine, and ſmiths water, of each foure ounces and a half; then make two little baggs of a quarter of a yard long, cauſing them to boyle in the foreſaid waters, in a new pot, uſing one after another as you have occaſion, leting it lye upon the bone of the Pubes, paſſing in between the hipps, chafing her often, and holding her head and her reines low, uſing in the morning, ſomtimes a little maſtick, in an eg, or ſomtimes plantaine ſeed: if the diſeaſe be not too old, it may be cured by this meanes, but if it be of a long ſtanding, you muſt make a peſſarie halfe

round

round, and half oval, of great thick cork, peirced through in the middle, tye a little packthred to the end, then cover it over with white wax, that it may doe no hurt, and to make it more thick this muſt be dipped in oyle of Olives to make it enter, and it muſt be ſtreit that it may not eaſily fall out, and if it be too little, to have an other bigger, & when the woman goes to do her neceſſary occaſions, ſhe muſt hold it in, leaſt ſhe ſhould force it out; the hole is made that the vapors of the womb may have a vent, and to give way for her purgations to flow, neither muſt it be taken away till after the purgations are paſſed, the thicknes cauſes the matrix to mount up as long as it is very thick, for the ligaments being cloſe doe then retire. If they be women that beare children, the midwife ought not to ſuffer them to force themſelves, but as nature conſtraines her, having her own hand ready after the throw, to put back the Matrix with her finger, and when ſhe is brought to bed, lay her low with her head and with her reines, raiſing her up, with pillows put under her hipps; and for women that are troubled with this diſeaſe, they ought not to lace themſelves over hard, for that thruſts down the matrix, and makes the woman pouch bellyed, and hinders the Infant form being well ſituated in her body, cauſing her to carrie the child all upon her hipps, and makes her belly as deformed, as her waſt is handſome.

Of

## of a disease that happens by reason of the fall of the Matrix.

THere is sometimes a relaxation of the membrane, that covers the *rectum Intestinum*, under the head of the child, at the beginning of the travaile falls downward, and draws it low; sometimes it comes by reason of women with child lacing themselves, which causes such a reflux of wind to these parts, that it seemes to the woman to be the head of the child, in so much that she is hardly able to stand upright, neither can she goe. For remedy hereof, you shall keep the woman soluble, giving her Anise and Coriander seeds to dissipate the winds. You must take Sage, Agrimony, Mother-wort, Time, White wormwood, Margerome a little and, and a little Thyme, and Camomile, and having picked all the above written herbs, you shall cut them very small, and having well mingled them put them into a maple platter, and then put hot cinders upon them, and upon those another handfull of herbes, covering the platter with a close cloth, that the woman may receive the smoake; this is a remedie which hath been much approved and experimented.

To

*To remedie the fall of the fundament in Infants.*

TAke of the green ſhrub wherof they m broomes, and cut it ſmal, and lay it up the coales, and ſet the child over the ſmoa thereof, and it will certainly cure it.

*Of the diſeaſes of women, and firſt of the inflammation of the breſt.*

THe inflamation of the breſts is a hard ſwel ing, together with a beating paine, redn and ſhooting. The cheif cauſe of this is t abundance of blood, drawn up together in th place, though there be ſomtimes other cauſ alſo, as the ſuppreſſion of the courſes, the Hæ morrhoids, or a blow received upon the breaſt The ſighes of it are eaſie to be known, that is t ſay, a certain rednes and burning heat, oftime joyned with a fever. For the cure of this, ther are four ſorts of remedies; firſt, as the order o dyet, which muſt be comforting and moiſtning as broth of pullets, where endive, borage lettice, and purſelaine may be boyled alſo; ſh may drinke the juce of Pomegranates, or barl water, with aniſeeds boyled in it: the uſe of wine and all ſorts of ſpices are very dangerous, and i the woman goe not freely to the ſtoole, there is nothing better then a lenitive glyſter; ſhe may ſleep much, and muſt not diſturb her ſelfe with any

y paſſion. The next way of remedy is by d-
erting the humours, which is done by friction,
ing blood in the foot, ſcarification of the
gs, or veſicatories applied to thoſe places, eſpe-
ally if the flowers are ſtopped or ready to
me down; if not, it will be expedient to open
eine in the arme.

You may alſo prepare the humour to void it
t of the place affected, by opening either the
ddle vein, or the Baſilic, or the Vena Saphe-
, which may be done two or three times, if
caſion ſerve; after bloud-letting, purge, but
t this be done with ſweet medicines, ſuch
e Caſſia, Manna, Tamarind, ſyrrup of Roſes,
Violets Solutive, having a little before uſed
rtain ſyrrups, which may aſſwage and temper
e humours. Take ſyrrup of Roſes and Purſ-
n, of each one ounce, Endive water and
antain water, of each an ounce, give this to
e patient; Neither will it be amiſs to give her
rrup of Succory, or Endive, or ſuch like, for
eſe ſyrrups have a cooling and refreſhing fa-
lty, eſpecially being mingled with Plantain,
Endive water, or ſuch like, or the decoction
the ſaid herbs; now when the humour is
us prepared, you may give her ſome gentle
urges. As for example, take of the pulp of
aſſia, and Tamarinds, of each ſix drams, of
is make a little bolus with ſome ſugar, and
ve to the patient, or with this potion.

Take of the Leaves of Italian Orach three
rams, of Aniſeed one ſcruple, infuſe theſe in
our ounces of the foreſaid waters. Into this
eing ſtrained, infuſe an ounce of Caſſia, and

into the ſtreining of this diſſolve an ounce o
ſolutive Roſes; of this make a potion and giv
it. The fourth way of cure conſiſts in Topick
ſuch as may drive back and repreſs the humou
though care muſt be had that they be not ove
ſtrong, leſt you thereby do cool the heart to
much, and thereupon drive the humour upo
the heart it ſelf. And therefore temperate medi
cines are chiefly to be choſen, and ſuch eſpecia
ly as are able to digeſt and diſſolve the humour
Wherefore it ſhall not be amiſs to apply a linne
cloath dipt in white ſtrong vineger, and a litt
cold water, which muſt be applied to the breaſt
and often changed. Or elſe you may dip linne
cloaths alſo in a decoction of Camomil flower
and Violet flowers, with a ſmall quantity of oy
of Roſes, and a drop of vineger or two; or yo
may uſe this fomentation. Take of the juyce o
Nightſhade & oyl of Roſes, of each an ounce an
a half, of the decoction of Fenugreek, Camomi
and Lineſeed two ounces, vineger one ounce.

This medicine you may uſe by dipping
ſpunge therein, and ſo waſhing and fomentin
the breaſt therewith.

Or you may apply this Cataplaſme; take o
the leaves of Nightſhade and Melilot half
handful of each, let them be boyled & extracte
through a courſe cloth then add to them bea
meal two ounces, Oxymel and oyle of ſwee
Almonds of each one ounce; of this make
Cataplaſm and apply it. If the diſeaſe be mor
prevalent, you muſt uſe more forcible remedies
and among the reſt this fomentation. Take o
the leaves of Mallows, Violets, Dill, of each
one

one handful, flowers of Camomil and Melilot of each a ſmall handful and a halfe, boyl theſe together, adding to them a little wine and oyl of Dill or Muſtard; firſt let the breaſt be fomented with this, and afterwards with an oyntment compoſed of equal parts of new butter, oyl of violets and Hens fat. But if theſe things avail not to diſſipate the humour, you muſt obſerve whether the inflamation tend either to a ſuppuration or induration. If you find that it tends to a hardneſs, you muſt try all means to hinder it by the way of mollifying plaiſters, among which this is not a little experimented: Take the marrow of a Calves leg two ounces, Sheeps greaſe one ounce, Saffron four ſcruples, Cumminſeed bruiſed, two ſcruples, mingle all theſe and make a plaiſter. If the inflamation doth not harden, but doth altogether tend to a ſuppuration, which may be known by theſe ſigns; that is to ſay, the increaſing of the tumour, the beating and exceſſive heat, & pain which rages about thoſe parts ſo vehemently, that do not admit them to be touch'd. But now the ſuppuration is to be haſtened with hot and moiſt medicines, which have an Emplaſtick faculty, for which purpoſe this is much commended: Take the leaves of Mallows one handful, roots of Althea one ounce, boyl theſe together, and when they are maſhed draw them out, and add to them bean meal and Fenugreek, of each one ounce, the whites of two eggs, myrrh and Aſſa fætida of each one dram, Saffron one ſcruple, mingle all theſe together, and make a Cataplaſm for your uſe; to this you may either add Capons greaſe, Hogs greaſe, or freſh butter,

ter. If theſe remedies do not ſuddenly bring the inflammation to a ſuppuration, you muſt then take of the ſhells of ſnails bruiſed, and lay them upon the Cataplaſm in ſuch a manner, that the ſnail ſhell may come to touch that part of the tumour which is moſt elevated and pointed, whence it appears, that the matter will firſt iſſue; If theſe remedies avail not, it will be neceſſary to open the ſaid Apoſtem, with a Lancet, and this muſt be done when you are ſure that the matter is ready to come forth, which may be known by theſe ſigns, when the beating ceaſes, when the fever, the pain and the heat of the part do begin to diminiſh, when you perceive the place pointed, and raiſed and enclining to a blackiſh colour. When the wound is open, you muſt firſt apply to it a digeſtive, compoſed of an ounce of turpentine, half an ounce of oyl of Roſes and the yolk of an egge. After this you muſt cleanſe it with honey of roſes, Turpentine and barly meal, or with the oyntment of the Apoſtles, or the oyntment called Ægyptiacum, then you may put on the top of the place, the oyntment called Baſilicon or Paracelſus plaiſter which doth digeſt, cleanſe carnifie & cicatrize after a very extraordinary manner. This is furthermore to be obſerved, that an ulcer in the breaſt is not eaſily cured, if the milk be not dried out of the other breaſt; and therefore the milke is to be dried up by keeping the child from ſucking, and by putting upon the breaſts of the woman, cloaths dipped in cold water, together with bean barly and vineger, and ſuch like remedies.

THE

# THE COMPLEAT MIDWIVES Practice.

## *Of windy Tumours in the Breasts.*

THe flatuous tumor of the breasts is caused by a thick vapour which rises from the menstruall blood which is retained or corrupted in the Matrix. The causes of which are, first the suppression of the flowers; or when the flowers are not discharged into their proper place, and in their proper time; as also from the corruption of the humours by which are ingendred divers bad fumes and vapours; for this being received into the breasts cause a distension much like a true swelling. The signes by

which it is known, is the pain wch it brings along with it, which is ſharp and pricking, cauſing a diſtention of the part. The heart is not a little out of order, by reaſon of the windineſſes which lie ſo neer it: and commonly the left breaſt is moſt ſwoln, communicating its pain to the arm, ſhoulder and ribs of the ſame ſide. And theſe ſignes differ from thoſe of a Canker; for in this diſtemper the breaſt is white and ſhining by reaſon of the diſtention; and if you touch it, it ſounds like a Drum. And if you preſſe it with your hands, you wil finde that it is ſweld in all parts alike, and not in one more then another. This is cured firſt by a good order of diet, taking little victuals, whereby crudities may be avoided that do afford matter to the obſtructions, and increaſe windineſſe: for which cauſe ſhe muſt alſo drink little, & that, water boyld with Cinamom, Anis-ſeed, and rinde of Citrons. The next remedy is by uſing things which are good to provoke the courſes, [among which uſe this receit; ſtrein Selandine ſtampt into poſſet-ale, and drink it four dayes before the new moon, and four dayes after.] And it will not be amiſſe to let blood three or four times in the year, about the time that the courſes ought to begin. For by this means you may provoke the flowers, & hinder the increaſe either of a Scirrhus, or of a Canker; to which purpoſe, bathes, frictions, and inſections are not a little to be uſed. In the next place, you muſt prepare the humours that foment this windineſſe both in the Matrix, and in the veins, and that by ſyrups which do expell flegme

and

and melancholy: after which you must purge your patient; for which purpose you may take of the leaves of Sene three ounces, Anis-seed one scruple; let them boyle in foure ounces of Borage water; when it is streined, infuse into it Confection Hamech without Scammony, Colloquint, and Cathol. Dupl. Rheo. of each an ounce and a halfe; when it is streined, dissolve in it one ounce of syrup of Roses solutive: this potion must be given two hours before eating. You may also use this gentle Apozem: Take of the root of Tamarinds, Cypress, Buglos, of each an ounce and a halfe, flowers of Borage, Epithymi, Sen. of each halfe a handfull, flowers of Balme one handful, Raisins one ounce, Prunes in number twelve, boyle them in a sufficient quantity of water: and then in a pint of the water dissolve foure ounces of the syrup of Violets; make of this an Apozem clarified according to Art, and sweeten it with a sufficient quantity of sugar, giving four or five ounces at a time. In the next place, you may use Topicks to attenuate and resolve; to which purpose you may bathe or foment the breast with a sponge dipt in Lye, and then lay upon it a linen cloth dipt and moistned in Aquavitæ, and dried in the shade; or else dipt in fresh butter that hath boyled a good while, or in oyle of Lillies, or in oyle both of the root & seed of Angelica; or you may foment the breast with this Decoction: Take Wheat-bran two handfuls, leaves of Dill and Melilot of each halfe a handfull, Anis-seed, Fenell and Cumin-seed, of each two drams, Camomill flowers one halfe handfull; boyl

all theſe in a ſufficient quantity of water and white wine, and let them boyle to the conſumption of the third part. In this decoction you may wet a ſponge, and waſh or foment the breaſt therewith. After you have fomented the part, you may put this ointment upon the part affected: Take oyle of Lilies & Elder, of each an ounce and a halfe, of the beſt Balſam halfe an ounce, powder of burnt lead unwaſht, Anis-ſeed one dram, and as much Wax as is ſufficient.

### *Of the watry tumour of the Breaſt.*

THe watry tumour is ingendred by a thick and watry flegme gathered together in great abundance in the breaſt and parts adjoyning: and it happens many times that this watry and flegmy ſubſtance is not alwayes gathered to one particular place, but alſo diffuſed through all the parts of the breaſt, which cauſes a generall ſwelling in that part. This ſwelling (that we may define it) is a looſe and ſoft tumour without much pain, yeelding to the touch and preſſing of the fingers, ſo that the hole which is made by the preſſing of the fingers remains a pretty while after; yet it ſoon becomes painful, if there be any acrimony joyned with it; or if there be any diſtention by reaſon of the preſs of vapours to that part. This oftentimes happens by reaſon of the ſuppreſſion of the courſes; ſometimes it is occaſioned by reaſon of a clear and watry flegme which diſcharges it ſelfe upon theſe parts. This ſwelling is eaſily diſtinguiſhed

shed from other swellings by reason of the loosnesse and softnesse thereof, and by the pain which is alwayes lesse then in other swellings: and in this kinde of tumour the pain ascends up to the arms and shoulders, and the whole breast is altogether swoln and raised; and this pain comes at certain times, chiefly when the flowers ought to come down, which being once come down, the pain diminishes, by reason that the woman is then throughly purged. Yet notwithstanding there doth remain some certain kind of swelling, which happens not in the windy tumours, by reason that the purgations of the flowers do totally dissipate the matter of those swellings. These flegmy tumours do easily turn into Cankers, and are therefore to be diligently looked after. As to the cure of these tumours, there is required first an orderly diet, which must be drying, her bread must bee well baked and leavened, dried Raisins, parched Almonds, Asparagus, rosted flesh, and small birds. Before meat she may take a little hony of Roses upon a wafer cake. For her drink, let it be the decoction of Anis-seeds, China root, Sassafras, and Sarsaparil. If the retention of the flowers be the cause of this evill, let her then use rather boyled then rosted meats, and then let her boyle them with Sage, Betony and Hysop. All meats made of milk are dangerous, as also sleep after dinner, and unleavened bread.

You may in the next place use things to divert the humor, as frictions and baths: if her flowers are suppressed, let a vein be opened in the feet. Next

after you have prepared the humor by the use of syrups, as those of Mint, Worm-wood, Hyssop, Licoras, Maidenhair, hony of Roses, with fenel water, water of Hyssop, Marjoram, Rosemary, Betony, Mint, then may you use some purges with those pils called *Sine quibus*, Agarick pils, and Cochie-pils. If the patient be strong, and not to be worked upon by weak Physick, you may then add two or three grains of *Diagridion*, or *Alandal Trochisques*; these pils are to be used for eight days, half a dram at a time. Another way may be by topicks, to attenuate and resolve: for which purpose the fomentations specified in the foregoing chapters may be very fitly used, being prepared with Vine ashes, or figg-tree ashes, whereto a little Vinegar may be put; though the use of things that drive back the humour are not here to be used; you may also rub and chafe the brest with this Ointment; take of Oyl of sweet Almonds, Oyl of Linseed, of each one ounce, ganders grease of each half an ounce, with a little *Diachylon* instead of Wax: a plaister of great *Diachylon* would not be amiss in this Disease; if the Woman feel any paine or heat in her breasts, let her anoint them with Oyl of Roses, a little burnt lead, and a little white wax; or with a little *Oleum Omphacinum*, and oyl of sweet Almonds tempered together in a mortar. In the disperfing and resolving of the humor you may use baths of alum and sulphur prepared with the decoction of Hyssop, Mint, and Sage, and after that such ointments as are most approved for the same purpose, alwaies taking heed of too boiste-

rous

rous Remedies: If you would suppurate or mature the swelling, you must use such Remedies as we have described in the following, and fore-going Chapters, the strongest of which you may here apply, because the matter is more obstinate and tenacious, mingling with them for that purpose other more effective Remedies, as are the Roots of Mallows, marsh mallows, lillies, figgs, goose grease, and the like; when the sore is opened, you must tend it after the same manner as is before rehearsed There are other Remedies either to be taken inwardly, or to be outwardly applied, which serve to fortifie and comfort the stomack, as to take every morning a spoonful of conserve of Rosemary, preserved Orange, or trochisques of *Aromaticum Rosatum*, *Diagalanga*, or *diacuminum*.

## *Of the kernels in the Breast.*

THe kernels of the breast are little round bodies soft and thin, like a sponge, which sometimes grow hard by reason of the phlegmie humor which is sometimes purely so, and sometimes is mingled with other sharp & acrimonious humors but sometimes it comes to passe, that not only the kernels of the breast are swollen; but also that there do grow others which ought not to be there which may not unfitly be termed a kind of the Kings-evil, being a swelling which proceeds of thick flegme, or else of a thick mattrie blood hardned under the skin; they are caused many times by the detention of the flowers, the bloud often

often times mounting up into the breast.

The cure of these is undertaken two waies; by softning the hard tumor, and preventing the Canker; and then also a strict diet is to be observed, which must be moderately attenuating, & by keeping themselves warm, which is performed by moderate exercise before meales, as also by using sulphury bathes; but ful Diet, ease, idleness, and meats of hard digestion are very dangerous; and indeed in all respects beside, the cure is the same as is set down in the foregoing Chapter. But if the kernel be swelled up with a sharp humour, those topicks are to be used that are prescribed also in the foregoing Chapter: onely in case the fluxion remain any time, you may mingle those things which do a little more refresh; such are oyl of Roses, and oyl of violets. When the flux of humours ceases, you may then add oyl of Camomil, and Lillies, and other such like things, to dissolve and dissipate the humor. If you find that this kernel is become a kind of Kings Evil, you must then use stronger Medecines; adding to the forementioned purgation a dram and a half of the root of Mechoacan, or three drams of Diaturbith. For topicks you may use such as do soften and dispel, but such as are stronger then these we have expressed in the former Chapter. You must at length when all other waies do fail, use the operation of the hand to take away the root of the disease; but this is not to be done til you have used all other means to soften and dispel the humour, which may perhaps be done by the use of Diachylon, or

mollo by

by a plaister of *Melilot*, to which you may adde alse an ounce of *Ammoniack*, an ounce of Oyl of Lillies, and an ounce and a half of the root of flower deluce of *Florence*; neither may this following Plaister be amiss: Take of the roots of *Althea* two ounces, boile them and straine them, and add to that oyl of Lillies, Ganders grease, of each an ounce, burnt lead, and roots of *Iris*, of each an ounce and a half; mingle all these together, and make of them an Emplaster: if this avail not, the operation of the hand must be used, in which the skil of the Chirurgion must be very able, and ready.

## *Of the Scirrhus of the Breasts.*

THe Scirrhus of the breasts is a hard swelling without pain: Of this there are two kinds, the one ingendred of a Melancholy, and produced by a feculent and grosse blood, or else from a thick flegme; now this exquisite Scirrhus is without paine, in which it differs from the other; The other is not so exquisite an hardnes, perhaps because it is not yet come to its ful maturity, or else because it hath certain other humours mixt with it. This exquisite kinde of Scirrhus is ingendred, either because the spleen is obstructed, and cannot purge away the melancholy blood, which for that reason abounding in the body discharges and empties it self upon the breasts; or by reason of the suppression of the courses, which causes the feculent and grosse humor to disgorge it self upon the

the breasts, gathering together in the Veins and flesh of the same. Many times the ignorance of the Chirurgion is the cause of it, when they apply an unreasonable company of refrigerating medicines to the inflammations of the breast, or too many resolving and heating medicines to it in case the breasts be over hard. This Scirrhus is known by its hardnesse without pain, from the unevennesse of the body, and the colour of the part either inclining to black or brown. Now though the cure of these hardnesses be something difficult, yet is there great hopes that they may be overcome; which is to be done two wayes, by mollifying diligently that which is hard, and by taking that away which remains hard and knotty in the breast. And first of all care is to be had to keep good order of diet; to which purpose she must use wheaten bread, reare egges, pullets, capons, partridge, veale and mutton, which must be boyled with Spinage, Bugloss and Borage; she must abstain from Beefe, Venison, Hares flesh and Brawn, from Pease and Beans, and unleavened bread, from all salt and smoked meats; as also from all things that have a sharp biting quality; also she must abstain from all care & sadness, immoderate exercise and going in the winds. If the monthly courses be stopt, you must seek to provoke them gently, which may be done by letting blood in the foot, or to let blood with horse-leeches: in the next place, it will not be amisse to purge well with Sene and Rheubarb, to which you may adde Catholicon, or Triphera Persica, if you find that the disease needs a more

strong

ng purgation. Between every purge it will not miſſe to take good cordiall and comfortable gs, as confection of Alkermes, Triaſantalon, ſmarium de gemmis, conſerve of the roots of ugt, conſerve of Orange flowers. You may af- ll this uſe Topicks, that is to ſay, ſuch medi- es as heat and dry moderatly, being hot in the nd degree, and dry in the firſt; ſuch are ſheeps uſe, eſpecially that greaſie ſubſtance that ws upon the flank of a ſheep, wax, oyle of et Almonds, oyle of Camomil, oyle of Dill, pons greaſe, Gooſe greaſe, Hogs greaſe, Bears aſe, &c. Veale marrow, Dears marrow, emulſi- s of Mallows, Lillies, and other things of more ce, as liquid pitch, liquid Storax, Galbanum, min ſeed, Rue ſeed, Broom flowers, and Dill ed. If this ſwelling come of a hard flegme, ichis known becauſe it yeelds not ſo much to the ch as the other; you muſt uſe the ſame topicks to , as to the watry tumour before rehearſed. If ancholy be the cauſe of it, you may uſe a fo- ntation of the leaves of Mallows, and Marſh- allows, of each a handful and a halfe, of Fenu- ek and Lineſeed of each two drams, Cucumbers, an foot, of each two ounces; boyle them in as uch water as is ſufficient, and foment the breaſt th this twice or thrice a day. After that take this ntment: take of the root of Mallows one ounce, hen it is boyled and bruiſed, take it out, and add it ſheeps greaſe, and Capons greaſe, of each two nces, and with a little Wax make an ointment. his you may uſe for ſome few dayes, after which

you

you may, if need require, use this ointment: Ta
Hyssop leaves, Dill leaves, and thyme leaves,
each half a handful, roots of Mallows, and Fen
greek-seed, of each half an ounce, boyl them in
much wine and vinegar as is sufficient, til halfe
boyld away; then take of the aforesaid vineg
Goose grease, Ducks grease, and the marrow
the leg of a Hart, of each two ounces, boyl it to
consumption of half the vinegar; you may add
this two drams of Diachylon, and make it in
the form of a plaister: You may also use for th
purpose plaisters of Melilot, or Oxycroceum.
length if all remedies faile, the operation of t
hand must be the last succour, which we leave
the Chirurgion.

## *Of the Canker in the Breasts.*

THe Canker is a venemous tumour, hard an
very much sweld, hot and durable, more exa
perated oftentimes by remedies then asswage
The Canker proceeds from a feculent and gro
humour, vvhich being gathered together in th
spleen, is chased away from thence after it grow
too hot; vvhich vvhen Nature cannot void, it mo
commonly in Women empties it self upon th
breast, by reason of this cavernous and spongy n
ture: the matter of it is a hot melancholy blood
and it is known by the crooked vvinding, and re
torted veins that are about it, stretching out lon
roots a good vvay from it, being sometimes black
ish, and sometimes inclined to black and blew.

ſoft to ſee to, but it is very hard to the touch, ex-
nding the pain as far as the ſhoulders. It wil ſome-
nes remain for two years together, no bigger
n a bean; afterwards it grows to be as big as a
, then to the bigneſs of an Egg; and after that
creaſing daily to a larger ſize. When the skin
eaks, there iſſues out a great deal of peſtilent mat-
r thin and blackiſh, and having a very bad ſmel.
he ulcer it ſelf is very unequal, the lips & orifice
reof being ſweld with hardneſs, and inverted; a
ght fever poſſeſſeth the body, and often ſwoon-
gs. And many times the peſtilencie of the humor
aving corroded a vein, there iſſues out a great
eal of blood. If the canker be ulcerated, or in any
nward part of the body, no medicine can prevail;
r remedies do more exaſperate then help it. To
urn it with iron is peſtilent; and if it be cut with
penknife, it returns again as ſoon as it is but
kind over. But if it be an exulcerated canker,
which is eaſily known, & ariſes from a more ſharp
matter, for then the fleſh is corrupted, ſending
orth a very noyſom mattier, being very irkſom
o the ſight, and accompanied with a gentle Fe-
er, and ſwooning, and iſſuing out of blood;) The
ure of this is to be done by drying & refrigerating
medicines, or by inciſion to the quick, & expreſſion
of the corrupted blood afterwards; after which the
wound muſt be wel cleanſed; for which purpoſe the
powder which is called *Hartmans bleſſed powder*, is
very prevalent. The diet muſt be of meats that moi-
ſten & refrigerate, blood-letting alſo is profitable, as
alſo preparatiõ of the humor wth the juice of ſweet

ſmelling

ſmelling Apples, and extract of Ellebore, and ten purgation with *Lapis Lazuli* pills; and particularly if the Canker be not ulcerated, you may apply this ointment: Take Litharge one ounce, beat in a marble mortar with a leaden peſtle, incorporating into it two ounces of Roſe water and oyle of Roſes. In caſe the pain be great, uſe this remedy; Take white poppy-ſeed one ounce, oyle of Roſes four ounces, Henbane-ſeed and Opium of each a dram and a halfe, gum Arabick halfe an ounce, a little wax, of which you may make an ointment. If the Canker be already ulcerated, take this water: Take of the juices of Nightſhade, Houſleek, Sorrell, Scabious, Honyſuckles, Mullein, Figwort, dropwort, Plantain, Linarum, Agrimony, of each halfe a pound, juyce of green Olives one pint, the fleſh of Frogs and river Crabs, of each a pound and a half, the whites of ſix Eggs, Alum three ounces, Camphire one dram; let all theſe be diſtilled in a leaden Limbeck, & with the diſtilled water foment the part affected. Take alſo Alum as much as a Nut, Hony two peny worth, red wine a pint, ſeeth them together till the fifth part be ſpent, ſtrein it through a cloth, and waſh the Canker therewith.

## *Of the greatneſs of the Breaſts.*

THe greatneſs of the breaſts is very unſightly, the cauſe of their greatneſs is often handling of them, ſtore of windy vapours, and retention of the monthly courſes; the cure of them is not to be neglected

neglected, becauſe the leſſer the breaſts be, the leſs ſubject they are to be cankered; they are cured by diet firſt, wherein the uſe of aſtringent meats is to be recommended, ſo that they be not windy by repercuſſion of the humors and bloud which flow to that part, ſuch are the juice of hemlock, and the anointing of the place with partridge eggs: or you may uſe this following cataplaſm; Take of the juice of hemlock three ounces, of white lead, *Acacia* and Frankincenſe, of each three drams, of Vinegar one ounce, mingle all theſe together, to which you may add powder of ſponge burnt, alum, burnt lead, Bole Armoniack, and of theſe with a ſufficient quantity of wax and myrtle make a very profitable ointment. Thirdly, by the diſcuſſion of that which is gathered together in that part; for which purpoſe you may make an ointment in this manner; Take of the mood or lome found in *molis Tonſorum*, two ounces, oyl of myrtle one ounce, Vinegar half an ounce; or thus, take of the ſame lome and Bole *Armoniack*, of each an ounce, white lead two drams, oyl of maſtick two ounces and a halfe, of the emulſion of henbane-ſeed one dram and a halfe, anoint the breaſt with this, and then upon that put a linen cloth dipt in the decoction of Oke Apples. Laſtly By compreſſion of the part, which is done by laying a kind of plate of lead upon the breaſt anointed within ſide with oyle of Henbane-ſeed.

Of

## *Of the defect, abundance, and coagulation of the Milk.*

THe defect of milk ariſes from a doubl cauſe; for either it is a defect in the blood which is dried up by reaſon of ſome hot maladie of the body, either through intemperancie o the Liver through faſting, or too much evacuation If the deficiency of milk come from theſe cauſes it may be increaſed again either by prepared chry ſtal; the leaves alſo, root and ſeed of Fenel do a vail much in this particular, and the powder o Earth-worms prepared and drunk in Wine, as alſo the Electuary called *Electuarium Zacuthi.* There is another cauſe which proceeds from the Lactify ing quality, which is many times ſo weak, that it can neither attract nor concoct the blood, by rea ſon of ſome outward refrigerating and aſtringent qualities, or by reaſon of ſome other diſeaſes The cure of which being looked after in their re ſpective places, much conduceth to the reſtoring o that defect. The redundance of blood proceeds from too great a plenty of blood, and a ſtrong la ctifying quality. In the cure of which the increaſe of blood is to be impeded, which is done by dry ing up that humor, and diverſion; to which blood letting conduceth much: Medicines alſo that drive it back are to be put upon the breaſts to ward the arms; to which purpoſe Hemlock boyld in Chervile water and vinegar, avails.

Curdling of the milk is, when the thinner part of

of the milk exhales, and the more grosse and heavy part stayes behinde, which many times is the cause of tumors, kernels, and Apostems. In this case the infant is not to suck the part affected; though that breast is also to be sucked, for fear lest the milk which is newly generated should be curdled and knotted by that which is there already, and so that part of the coagulated milk may be hindered from putrifying. To the dissolving of the milk it much conduceth to wash the breast with water, wine and vinegar mixt together, as also a Fomentation made of the decoction of Marshmallows, Fenugreek, and melilote, and then anointing them with a liniment of Oyl of Roses, Oyl of sweet Almonds, juice of Parsley, and Vinegar, wherein let the gall of a Hare be first dissolved. Hemlock water in this case also is not a little commended.

## *Of the Diseases of the neck of the Womb: and first of the Disease called* Tentigo.

*Tentigo* is a Disease in Women, when the Clitoris increases to an over-great measure; the subject of this disease is the Clitoris or nervous peece of flesh which the lips or wings of the privities do imbrace, and which suffers erection in the act of venery; the signes of it are evident, for it hangs below the orifice of the privity as bigg as the neck of a Goose, the causes hereof are a great concourse of hu-

mours or nutriment, by reaſon of the laxity of it, which happens by often handling. The cure is performed by the diminution of the bloud, and drawing out of the other humors. A ſlender and refrigerating dyet is alſo neceſſary, and ſuch things as have a diſcuſſive faculty, as the leaves of Maſtick tree, and the leaves of Olive tree. In the next place, by taking away the excreſcence; to which purpoſe gentle cauſticks may be firſt applyed, as Alum, and the Ægyptiac oyntment, and that lye whereof ſope is made, being boyled with Roman Vitriol, to which at laſt you may add ſome *opium*, and form the compoſition into Trochiſques, which being afterwards made into a powder, is to be ſprinkled upon the fleſhie excreſcence: at length the fleſh is to be cut away, either by binding hard, or by ſection, care being taken that you avoid an inflammation.

There is another diſeaſe which is called *Cauda*, which is a carnous ſubſtance proceeding from the mouth of the womb, which ſometimes fils up the privy parts, and ſometimes thruſts it ſelf outwards like a tayl. The cure of this is the ſame with the former; onely if it come to ſection, it may be done either with a horſe-hair, or a liſken thread wound about it, being firſt dipt in ſublimate water; or elſe with a knife.

Of

## *Of the narrowneſs of the neck of the Womb.*

THis narrowneſs is either of the Womb it ſelf, or of the orifice of the Womb; the ſignes are the ſtoppage of the Courſes, followed with a depreſſing and weighty paine. The cauſe is partly natural from the nativity, and partly varies according to the differences of the diſeaſe: the difference is in this, it hapning ſometimes that this ſtreightneſs conſiſts in the exterior orifice, whereby neither the flowers have free paſſage, neither can ſhe enjoy coition, or conceive with child, becauſe ſhe cannot receive either the man or the ſeed. Sometimes the narrowneſs is in the interior orifice of the Womb, into which the flowing retires back again, to the abſolute hindrance of conception; ſometimes it is occaſioned by way of compreſſion, when the Caul being fatter then ordinary lies upon the neck of the Womb. Sometimes the ſplaying of the thighs, ſtone in the bladder, or ſome tumor in the ſtreight gut. Sometimes it happens by the clinging of other parts together, which happens either from the birth, and then either the fleſh which appears red, and is ſoft to the touch intercepts the paſſage; or elſe the membrane which ſeems white feels hard being touched. In the cure of this the uſe of moiſt fomentations is very prevalent, and an inſection is to be made perpendicular-

ly, great care being taken for feare of hurting the neck of the bladder. The humour is next to be provoked forth, and a Tent dipt in some suppurating plaister is to be put up; the next day it is to be washed with water and honey, and cicatrizing plaisters to be applied; if it come after the birth, it is either occasioned by an ulcer, and then either the sides of the neck cling together, in which case either incision or cauterization is to be used, or else there is a brawnie substance which is to be cut away with a penknife; or else some spungie & luxuriant flesh, in which case drying and discussing Medecines are to be used, as Birthwort Frankincense, Myrrh, and Mastick; afterwards you may apply things to eat it away; and last of all to cut it away by incision.

## *Of Wheals, condylomas of the Womb, and of the Hemorrhoids.*

THe Wheals of the VVomb are certain risings in the neck of the womb, which by their acrimony excite both paine and itching. The signes of them are an itching, paine, and fall of scurf from that part, for the better searching of which the instrument called *speculum Matricis* is to be used. The cause of this are certain cholerick, sharp, and adust humors, and thick, which falling upon these moist and loose places do there easily make their way. The cure depends upon the consideration of the

causes

cauſes: Among the preparing Medecines ſyrup of Fumitory is much commended, and Cichorie with a decoction of Lupines. Topicks alſo are uſeful that diſcuſs and mitigate the humor, as baths, and inſeſſions, and the waſhing of the place with wine and Nitre, which is often to be uſed. Theſe wheals are divided into gentle, and venemous, which are ſaid to be contagious; they are to be waſhed in a water thus made. Take of Aloes the quantity of a pea; of the flowr of braſs the quantity of half a pea; powder theſe, and mingle them in an ounce of white wine, Plantain-water, and Roſe-water, of each an ounce, which is to be kept in a glaſs veſſel.

*Condylomas* are certaine ſwelling wrinkles in the neck of the Womb, with pain and heat. There is no need to tel the ſignes of theſe, for they are apparent to the eye; the wrinkles are like thoſe which appear in the hand when you cloſe the fiſt; but are much bigger when the courſes flow: they are cauſed by aduſt and thick humors; ſome of theſe are with an inflamation, which have more paine and heat, and the ſwelling is hard: In the cure of which you muſt uſe inſeſſions, and fomentations that eaſe paine; ſometimes they come without any inflammatiõ, which if they be new come are to be dryed up; if they be old, they are firſt to be ſoftned, afterwards to be digeſted and dryed up; for which purpoſe you may uſe powder of Eggſhels burnt, or this Ointment: Take of the

Trochiſques of ſteel one dram powderd, mixt with a little Oyl of Roſes, and wax, with half an ounce of the juice of Mullein; if this profit not, the warts are to be ſhaved away with a knife, and an aſtringent powder laid upon them.

*Hemorrhoids* of the VVomb are little protuberances like thoſe of the fundament, produced in the neck of the womb through the abundance of feculent blood; the ſubject is the neck of the womb, for where the veins end, there do grow theſe extuberancies, juſt as in the *Hemorrhoids*.

The ſignes are evident, and eaſily ſeen by the help of the *Speculum Matricis*: the women who are thus affected look pale, and are troubled with a wearineſs.

The cauſe is a Feculent bloud, which flowing to theſe veins before its ſeaſon and ſetling there grows thicker, ſo that it cannot pierce the orifice of the veins. They are cured by a revulſion of the humor, firſt by letting blood in the arm; ſecondly, by drawing it to another part, as by letting blood in the heel. Sometimes theſe *Hemmorrhoids* are very painful, and are diſtinguiſhd from that menſtruous effuxion, by the pain which they bring: they are cured by mitigating and aſſwaging inſelſions; as alſo by *opiates* carefully applyed. Others are without pain, to which the foreſaid Remedies may be applied.

Others are open, and do ſometimes run moderately

derately, and then nature is to be let alone; or violently, ſo that thereby the ſtrength of the perſon is impaired, in which caſe a vein muſt be opened in the arm two or three times; purgation is alſo to be uſed by Myrobalans, Tamarinds, and Rheubarb; and at length you muſt apply thoſe things which ceaſe the blood.

Others are termed blinde, out of which there iſſues no blood; they are cured by blood-letting; the part is to be alſo ſoftned and fomented with things that ſoften and open the orifices of the veins, and diſpel the humor; ſuch are an Ointment made of the pith of Colocynthis, and Oyl of ſweet Almonds, or the juice of Capers mixt with Aloes; neither is the applying of Horſ-leeches amiſs.

## *Of the Ulcers of the neck of the Womb.*

THe ſignes of theſe Ulcers is a paine, and perpetual twinging, which increaſes, if any thing that hath an abſterſive quality be caſt in; the iſſuing out of putrid humors, and mattier with blood, if the Ulcer be great, or the flowers come down; often making water, and the water hot; as alſo a paine in the fore part of the head toward the roots of the eyes; as alſo ſome kinde of gentle Fever.

The cure of this is hard, becauſe of its being in a place of ſo exquiſite ſenſe, and moiſt, and

having such a sympathy with other parts of the body; for the easing of the paine, Chalybeated milk is very much conducing; & to the drying of them up, drying baths are the best and most prevalent Remedy. These differ much, coming either from external causes, as rash physick, hard labour, and violent coiture: or from internal causes; as the corruption of the secundines, the courses reteined, and the uterine flux, a virulent *Gonorrhea*, the pox, inflammations turned into Apostemes, Humors flowing from other parts of the body, and there setling; all which must be duly considered in the cure; Others are in the outward part, and may be easily come at with medecines: others deep, and must be come at only with injection; for which purpose use this following.

Take whites of four Eggs, beat them wel, and put to them an equal quantity of Rosewater, and Plantain-water as much in quantity as they come to, Camphire, Cerase, Litharge of gold, and Bole Armoniack, of each a little quantity, green Copperas half as much as of any of them, beat all to powder, mix it, and strein it through a cloth, and make your injection til the part affected be whole; and if there be any paine, sometimes inject a little new warm milk.

Others are more gentle, with a little stinking mattier flowing from them. For the cure of which gentle absterfives are profitable, as hony of Roses with Barly-water, whey with sugar,

and

and the decoction of Lentils: after these gentle astringents must be applied. Others are sordid, with much mattier flowing from them: In which case stronger medecines must be appli'd. Others do eat into the flesh, having a colour'd green & stinking mattier flowing from them. For the cleansing of which Aloes and wormwood ar: very much commended, or the forsaid injection.

There are another sort of ulcers little and long, which eat the skin of the neck of the womb; they are known by the pain and blood which they produce immediatly after congression; they are seen also by looking into the neck of the womb, being much like Childblains that come upon the hands in Wintertime. They are caused divers wayes, either by a difficult lying in, or by a violent coiture, and cured by an astringent Clyster: or they are produced by some inflammation, or Flux of sharp humors; purgations are here needfull, before Topicks be applied, among which is much commended the grease that fries out of wooden ladles, much used in Kitchins, being held to the fire; as also the ointment called *Pomada.*

Of

## Of the diseases of the Womb.

### Of the Womb being out of temper.

THe intemperance of the womb is when it hath loſt its natural temper, and is affected with a preternatural intemperancy ariſing both from inward and outward cauſes. The one of theſe is hot, and is known by the womans pronenesſe to Venery, by the ſmall Flux of the monethly courſes, by their aduſtneſſe, ſharpneſs, inordinate and difficult flux. (Hence in proceſſe of time they are very hypochondriack) by early growing of the hairs about the privities, by redneſſe of the face, and dryneſs of the lips, and frequent pains of the head, and abundance of cholerick humors in the body; it ariſeth either at firſt from the birth, which cauſes women to be Virago's, and to be barren; or after their nativity, from outward cauſes, as the uſe of hot things, overmuch Venery, and ſuch medicines as bring the heat and blood to the womb. The cure conſiſts in a contrary diet, and cooling medicines, both internal and external, which are to be applied to the back and ſides; which muſt be very moderate, that the heat which is neceſſary for conception may not be weakened, and the cold and membranous ſubſtance of the womb come to any harm; or leſt the veſſels which ſerve for the carrying away of the courſes

ſhould be thickned, and the nerves of the
k and ſides be any waies miſchieved.
The next way of cure is performed by eva-
ting medicines, namely Rheubarb and ſo-
ve ſyrup of Roſes, Manna alſo profits
ch; the flower of Vitriol of Venus and
s taken from three grains to ſix, and put
ny proper ſyrup, purges the womb.
There is another intemperancy which
es of cold, which is known by a leſſer
neneſſe to Venery, and little pleaſure taken
, a ſetling in the courſes, with a ſlimy and
egmy matter mixed, and an inordinate
ing of them by reaſon of the plenty of hu-
s collected in the womb, which cauſes ob-
ſtions by reaſon of abundance of windy
ours in the womb, crudity and watrineſſe
he ſeed, which cauſes it to flow without a-
pleaſure, a pale colour in the face: it ariſes
m cauſes contrary to the former; it is cu-
by contrary diet, by hot medicines applied
the womb, among which the roots of
hwort, Clove-Gilliflowers, Angelica,
Eringos, are very much commended. The
ves alſo of Mercury, Baulm, Dittany, Peny-
all, Sage, Roſemary, Mugwort, flowers of
taurie, Marigolds, Sage, Roſemary, Borage;
d ſundry ſpices, as Nutmegs, Cubebs, Saf-
n and Cinamom. Theſe kinde of com-
nds are alſo very uſefull, as oyle of Mace,
le of Amber, oyle of Myrrhe, and of Ci-
nom.

There

There is another intemperancie of the wo
which comes of moisture, and is joyned
commonly with the cold intemperancie:
known by the plenty of the courses, and
thinnesse and watrinesse of them, as also
moistnesse of the privities by reason of
moistnesse of the excrements, no pleasure in
act of venery, and proneneſſe to abortion
reason of the growth of the birth. It hath
same original with the frigid intemperan
and happens most commonly to women
are lazy and sedentary; it is cured with
same medecines as the former; onely this
be added, that a fume may be made of
shavings of Ivory: and the decoction of S
being received into those parts before suppe
very much commended. Baths of Sulp
do also profit much.

There is another distemper of the wo
which is dry, which is discerned by the
of seed, and the defect of the courses, by slo
nesse to venery, drinesse of the mouth of
womb, by a blackish colour of the lower
which is alwayes chapt. It sometimes ar
from the very nativity, which causes a dry
lean constitution of body; sometimes throu
age, and then women cease to bring childr
sometimes from inflammations, and such
diseases; sometimes from a defect of blo
which ought to moisten the parts; which ha
pens either through a narrownesse and obst
ction of the veins, or else because it be
void

ided out at the neck of the womb cannot
rce to the bottom. The cure of this is per-
rmed first by a contrary diet, where you must
o avoid much labour, watching, hunger, and
dneſſe. Secondly, by the uſe of moiſtning
ings, amongſt which are moſt commended
rage, Bugloſs, Mercury, Mallows, Violets.
mong outward means, Bathes of ſweet water,
d unctions with oyle of ſweet Almonds,
yle of white Lillies, Hens-greaſe, and the mar-
ows of Calves legs. The cure is the more
rd, if the drineſs have been of any long con-
nuance.

There is another which is a compound di-
emper, which is moſt often cold and moiſt,
hich is diſcerned by comparing the ſignes of
e ſimple diſtemperatures together. It ariſes
om flegmie humors: The cure is performed
y preparing the matter with hot things, by e-
acuation of the matter with ſuch Medecines
s are moſt proper to purge flegme: as alſo by
particular purgation of the Womb it ſelf; to
hich purpoſe peſſaries do very much conduce;
s alſo ſulphury and drying baths; as alſo the
ſe of ſudorificks, or things that provoke ſweat
may be very profitable, as the decoctions of
*Lignum ſanctum*, *China*, *Sarſaparilla*, and ma-
tick wood.

Of

## *Of the narrowneſs of the Veſſels of the VVomb.*

THe ſignes of the narrowneſs of the ves of the Womb, are partly the retention the flowers ſo that they cannot flow, as alſo t hindrance of conception, by reaſon that t paſſage of the blood is intercepted.

The cauſes are partly external, as from ſtringent baths, and Medecines, which is kno from the relation of the party affected; it cured more eaſily by moiſtning and mollif ing medicines.

The other cauſes are internal, as from fle or membrane, clinging to the orifices of t womb, or by a cloſing up of the orifices of t veins by reaſon of ſome violent extraction the ſecondines, which is commonly incurabl the only cure which may be tryed is by moll fying applications. Another cauſe is deduce from obſtruction, which ariſes from certai thick viſcous and copious humors flowin from other parts of the body, the heat of thoſ places not being able to attenuate them, or elſ gather together in the womb it ſelf by reaſon of the weakneſs of the heat of that part: it is diſcerned by the ſame ſigns as the cold diſtemper, there being alſo a ſlimy matter which now and then comes down from the womb: It is cured as other obſtructions, by ſharp and bitter Medicines, and ſteel wine, as alſo baths made with

th opening and mollifying things.

Sometimes this narrowneſs ariſes from a mpreſſion of the parts, occaſioned either by me ſwelling, or Scirrhus, either within or thout the womb; if this be, there do appear niſeſt ſignes of ſwelling: it is an evil for moſt part incurable; many times it is occa- ned by an over fatneſs of thoſe parts, which plain to the ſenſe.

*Of the puffing up of the Womb.*

The puffing up of the Womb is a windy ſwelling of that part, occaſioned from a ld, flegmie, and flatulent matter, which is creaſed through the defect of natural heat in Womb: This is called the windy mole, it ving hopes of a conception. The ſignes of is are a diſtention of the womb not far from midriff, which is now increaſed, now di- niſhed; ſometimes extending it ſelf to the vel, ſometimes to the loyns, and Diaphrag- It differs from the Dropſie, partly becauſe ſwelling is not ſo great, and the party affe- d is not much troubled with thirſt, by the creaſing and diminiſhing of the tumor; and the upper parts, not being ſo lean.

It is diſtinguiſhed from the Dropſie of the omb by the fore-apprehenſion of the cauſes at beget thoſe windy vapours, by the ſound d leſs ponderoſity, as alſo by a feeling of extenſive and pricking pain in the womb,

and

and parts adjoyning. It is also distinguish from an inflation of the intestines, becau here is no great pain, neither is the Patie hard bound, yet the Flowers are suppresse and the feet and hollow of the eyes do sw and the colour of the body is changed, t woman draws her breath short, and is sad, a when she awakes is fain to lift up her head take breath. It differs from a mole, becau there is not that heaviness and ponderosity the womb; besides, the woman doth not feel t burden of her womb tumble from one side the other: It is distinguished from conceptio by the sound, and by the increasing and c creasing of the swelling, and by the deadn of the motion, not like that of a dead infa For if the Midriffe be violently compress the winde being then compelled to the p adjoyning, there is a kinde of palpitating m tion perceived through all the Midriff.

The matter of this distemper is genera either in the womb it self, or by reason of suppression of the courses, or by the intercep on of due purgation after delivery. Many tim it comes through the veins and seminal vess Now the weaknesse of the heat proceeds som times from the external aire, sometimes fr hard delivery, from the suppression of the co ses, from abortion, &c. The cure is perform after the same way that other cures are rem died: among those things that purge, *Spe Hieræ*, and *Diaphænicon*, with *Castor*, are m

co

commended; for Fumes, Nutmeg is counted the beſt; for potions, Nutmegs bruiſed and boiled with the roots of Mather, and drunk in ſix ounces of wine, and two drams of ſugar. Sometimes this winde gets into the cavity of the womb, and then the neck and orifice of the womb is cloſed, ſo that nothing can go forth, when the woman is moved, or when the Midwife is preſſed down with her hand, and then a winde of noyſe and ſound is perceived. Sometimes the winde gets into the tunicles of the womb, and then the mouth of the womb may be open; by reaſon of the ſhutting up of the windy vapours in a narrow place, there goes a noyſe forth, and the pain grows greater, and extends farther. This is more hard and difficult to be cured then that which is in the concavity of the womb.

## *Of the inflammation of the Womb.*

THe inflammation of the womb is a ſwelling of the ſame through the putrefaction of blood which is fallen down into its ſubſtance, having many ſymptoms, & now tending to a Scirrhus, now toward an Apoſtem.

The ſignes are various; There is a ſwelling in the womb with heat and pain, and a retraction of the womb to the more inward parts, the neck of the womb appears red, with little veins ſcattered up and down in it, like the web of a ſpider. There is ſometimes a difficulty

of breathing, with ſome kinde of pleuriſie because the interior tunicle of the womb being extended, which riſes from and is joyned to the Peritoneum, the parts alſo to which that coheres, are ſtretched. The excrements of the belly and bladder are detained by reaſon of the heat and drineſſe of the belly, and the compreſſion of the paſſages. Sometimes the whole body of the belly ſeemeth empty, and filled with water, and the navell hangs forward, and the mouth of the womb is made very ſlender and cloſe; and upon a ſudden a few depraved courſes come down: then happens a burning Fever by reaſon of the great ſympathy with the womb and the heart occaſioned through the Arteries and great veſſels. There is a pain in the breaſts, with a ſwelling in them, by reaſon of the conſent and agreement between the groyns, the hips, the ſeptum tranſverſum clavicularum, and the fore-part of the head, which is extended to the roots of the eyes; as alſo from the vapours which riſe from the putrified blood to the head, through the arteries that run along through the neck, paſſing by both parts of the infundibulum into the fore-part of the head.

The cauſe of this conſiſts in the blood, which is ſometimes mixed with choler, and ſometimes with melancholy.

The cure is difficult, if the blood in that part be wholly putrified; for that cauſeth a ſordid humor vvhich conſumes the patient vvith a

ntinual Fever. If it be an *Erisypelas*, or *St:*
*thonies* fire, there is no cure at all, because th:
th dies by reason of the excessive heat
hich causes abortion to follow, which kils
e woman; if it turn to a gangreen, it is dead-
: it is cured as other inflammations, which
y be observed in the following Chapters.
ly observe that for revulsion you must not
blood in the vein s of the thighs, for that
aws down the blood to the womb; but in the
m, the blood flowing from the liver, and the
rts adjoyning. For deriving of the matter,
u may cut a vein in the hamm, unlesse the
oman be with child, for that wil cause abor-
n; Refrigerating and moistning topicks,
thout any binding faculty, may be wel ap-
yed; to which purpose the decoction of *Ser-*
*s* prepared with Chalybeat water, and out-
rdly applyed with a sponge, is an excellent
medy.

These inflammations sometimes affect the
hole womb, and sometimes either side of the
omb, which causes the heat to descend into
e hip, because of the ligaments of the womb
hich are carried thither; the thigh is difficult-
moved, and the groins are inflamed; some-
mes the inflammation possesseth the posterior
rt, which causes the Belly to be bound, and
pain in the loines, and back bone; sometimes
possesseth the forepart, which because it co-
res to the Bladder, the urine is suppressed, or
ade very difficultly; and the paine is exten-

ded above the privities: ſometimes it poſſeſſe the bottom of the womb, which cauſes ſuch pain in the lower part of the Belly, that it i hardly to be touched, and the pain extends t the navel.

There is another inflammation which dege nerates into a Scirrhus, where all the ſymp toms are not ſo dangerous, yet there is a grea heavineſs perceived in the parts adjoyning This evil is diuturnal, and commonly ends i the Dropſie; ſometimes it turns to an Apo ſtem, ſwelling til it break: In this caſe th body is troubled with a ſhivering, eſpeciall towards the evening; when the Apoſtem i broken, ſometimes it empties it ſelf into th concavity of the womb, wherein there is leſſe danger; and ſometimes into other parts of th body; which cauſes ſometimes a ſtoppage i the Urine, and ſometimes in the belly, with a ſwelling of the hairy parts, and the feeling o ſomething floating up and down.

## *Of the Scirrhus of the Womb.*

THe Scirrhus of the Womb is a hard ſwel ling of the ſaid part without paine, begot by ſome thick earthy and feculent humor; the ſignes, beſides others that are general, are thoſ in particular; The flowers at the beginning are either wholly ſtopt, or flow very ſparing ly; the evil increaſing, there is a great Flux of blood by intervals, the mouths of the veines being

being opened more then ordinary; or because the Womb is not able to receive, or to retaine its wonted proportion of blood: it is distinguished from the Mole, because in that distemper the Flowers, if they flow, flow inordinately; the breasts swel with milk, which in the Scirrhus grow very lank.

The cause of this is a gross feculent humor, being a thick blood, sometimes Flegmy, sometimes Melancholy, which happens to those who decline in their age; or to those who have been troubled with a squeamish and naught stomach often it arises from an ill cured inflammation, through the use of medecines that cool too much.

The cure is difficult, either because having been dryed for a long time they cannot be softned, or because the natural heat in those places where the Scirrhus is, is for the most part extinct; and then because while the humour is mollifying, if it have conceived any putrefaction, it easily turns to the Canker: for the cure, it is the same as of the Breasts.

It differs either as being in, and possessing the substance of the womb, which causes the womb to lean downward upon the hip, and back, and there begets pain; sometimes possessing the neck of the womb, which is discerned by touching it, and is cured more easily then the former: if it be in the upper part of the neck of the womb, the Woman is hindred in

the lower part of the neck of the womb, the streight gut is affected.

### *Of the Dropsie of the Womb.*

THe Dropsie of the womb is a distemper from water collected in the womb, either by some fault in the part it self, or in the parts adjoyning. The signes of this are a loose swelling at the bottom of the Belly, extending it self according to the proportion of the womb; the fewness and naughtiness of the Courses; a moistness, and slenderness of the neck of the womb, softness of the Breast, want of Milk, a shivering in the body, and sometimes a Fever: It differs from an inflammation by the symptoms above related; and from an inflation, in the defect of sound and distention; from a Mole, because in this there is a greater weight perceived at the bottom of the Belly, and the Breasts at the time of delivery are not without Milk. It differs from Conception, because in the Dropsie the swelling is just according to the form of the womb; but in Conception it is alwaies sharper. In women with Child the flowers do not flow; but in this disease there flows such a certain bloody vitious humor, without any order, which ceases quickly. It differs from the Dropsie of the Belly, because the face of the Patient is coloured, unless the liver be any way affected, the want of thirst, and the ascent of the swelling from the lower part to the upper. The

The cauſe of this is a water gathered there ough ſome defect of the Liver or Spleen, through ſome weakneſſe in the vvomb; by ſon whereof it is not able to concoct or ex- the excrements; or through a too immode- defluxion of the courſes, which oppreſ- the naturall heat; or through a ſuppreſſion hem, which ſuffocates the heat.

The cure is to be performed by the eductio of the water, and ſtrengthening of the mb; for which purpoſe the uſe of Antimo- pils is not a little to be commended. Her muſt be of meats that breed good juice; muſt drink little; ſhe may uſe in ſtead of a Ptiſane or Barly-broth, made with ſaſras, or ſalſaparil; if her courſes be ſtopt, may let her blood in the foot: if the reple- on be great, then to let her blood in the arm not be amiſſe. Some have commended the coction of the root of *Fugere*, to take atmeals, between meals, without any other drink. The uſe of Clyſters is not amiſſe, and Fo- mentations are alſo very neceſſary, made with the decoctions of Broom, wild Cu- umbers, flowers of Camomill, Melilot, with Origan, Cumin, Fenel, Anis-ſeed, of which you may make ſeverall infections. Ointments alſo may be uſeful made of oyle of Lillies, or oyle of Dill: then may you apply upon the belly this plaiſter: Take of the emplaſter of Laurel berries, two ounces; oyle of Camomill and Melilot, two ounces and a half; Pigeons

dung and Goats dung, of each half an ounce mix them all together, and make a plaiſter adding thereto a little Venice Turpentine.

## *Of the falling of the Womb.*

THe falling of the womb is the falling of it down below the *Abdomen*, or Midriffe proceeding from a looſneſſe of the Ligaments.

The generall ſignes of this are, a pain in the loyns and hairy parts, and of the *Os ſacrum*, or holy bone, to which the womb is faſtned; at the beginning the pain is not very great, not after long continuance, by reaſon of uſe: the weight thereof being onely troubleſom, which is an impediment to the patient in going; the particular ſignes do vary, according as the fall is greater or leſſe: for in the one the womb deſcends to the middle of the Hips, and lower; in the latter there is perceived the diſtention of the skin, and as it were the weight of a good big Egg about the privities.

The cure of this is difficult, if there be the greater falling of the womb, if the woman be in age, if a Fever, Convulſion, or other ſymptoms happen; if that be in women with child, it is deadly; and ſometimes it is corrupted by the ambient aire, and turns into a Gangrene. The cure conſiſts in the reputting of it into its own place; where you muſt obſerve firſt, to ſtop the inflammation, if there be any

ny; or if there be any ſwelling cauſed by the cold aire, you muſt foment the part firſt with the decoction of Mallows, Marſh Mallows, flowers of Camomill, and Laurel-berries. If there be any winde or excrement in the gut, you muſt uſe Clyſters firſt; it is alſo to be fomented and anointed with agglutinating and aſtringent or binding medicines; there is a Fumigation to be made of the skin of a ſalt Eele dried and powdered. When it is to be put into its place, the woman muſt be laid with her belly upwards; then muſt the Midwife, or other party imployed, with a linen cloth dipt in oyle of Roſes a litle warmed, gently thruſt up the part which is fallen, as gently as may be, turning it a little. Now to keep it up, the woman muſt be kept lying on her back, with her thighs ſtretched out, and one laid upon another acroſſe; the belly muſt not be too much bound, leſt in the ejection of the excrement the womb ſhould be again precipitated; neither muſt it be looſe, leſt the membranes binding the womb ſhould be unlooſed: then muſt you uſe agglutinating medicines, Peſſaries, Fomentations, and Injections; yet great care muſt be had leſt you ſuppreſſe the courſes. Of this there be ſome differences, either by reaſon of the looſneſſe of the Ligaments which are foure, which is diſcerned in that it is generated by degrees, and with leſſe pain: It ariſes either from hard labour, or a ponderoſity or heavineſſe of the childe,

or

or from the concourse of flegmie humors; it is cured by the evacuation of humours, and by the use of astringent and corroborating Medecines; such as are the decoction of musk of the Oak, Harts-horn, Laurel leaves, and the Astringent plaister.

Another cause and difference ariseth from the rupture of the Ligaments; which is discerned by this, that the evil comes suddenly, and is more painful, and is sometimes followed with a flux of Blood; it arises from the heavines of the Birth, or from a difficult labour, or from Abortion, or a difficult and violent extraction of the secundines.

Sometimes it happens because the ligaments are eaten away, and then the signes of some ulcer are discerned by the flowing forth of mattier.

## *Of the ascent of the Matrix, as also of the Wounds and Ulcers of the same.*

SOme have thought that it is possible for the womb to ascend up to the stomack, which opinion is altogether false; for first it is tied so fast with four Ligaments, that it is impossible for it to move to the upper parts: Besides, suppose it had a naturall motion by the Fibres, yet the womb being so firmly annexed to the right gut, and to the privities, it would necessarily follow that those parts should be also stretched. And though it happen to be

stretched

ched and distended by the windy vapours, it follows not that therefore it should be oved upward: and whereas women do say they do sometimes perceive a certain round dy moving about the region of the navel, t may rather be said to be the stones, and t blind vessel, then the womb.

Of the wounds of the Matrix this must be ed, that they are very difficult to be cured. the cure is to be assayd five manner of yes; by the use of things which do evacuate peccant humor, which is done partly by a od order of dyet, and living in a dry and mperate aire; Longer sleep then ordinary, d the avoiding of exercise in this case is to observed, and instead thereof to use mode- e frictions: all repletions, and a loose Belly naught; the meat that she eats must be lit- , and contrary to the humor that offends, as are eggs, Milk, Chicken Broths, and the meat them, dry Raisins, Almonds, and Pistaches. or her drink, it ought to be chiefly the decocti- of Barly, or liquorice.

In the next place, it will not be amiss to let lood in the Basilick vein: let her take some nvenient purge according to the humour hich abounds: Vomitings also and frictions ay be used, and the provoking of sweat by e decoction of *Guaiacum*, Sarsaparil, & Chi- root, which are very proper to turn away the umors from the Matrix.

Some-

Sometimes this happens from an intemp
rancie of the womb, which if it be cold, t
womb is not able to concoct ſufficient quan
ty of nouriſhment, and therefore heaps up t
gether many excrements; if it be moiſt, it is n
able to contain either the blood, or the ſeed,
the birth, as it ſhould do. The cure of this is
bove touched in the chapter of Diſtempers.

There is another difference which is tak
from the occult qualities which the womb
ſeen to have, there being a ſympathy and a
tipathy between that and divers things, as
covet the ſeed of man, and to love ſweet thing
and then the affection ariſes from no evide
cauſe, there being no exceſſe of coldneſſe
moiſture to be apprehended. The medecin
which are to be applied for the cure of thi
muſt be proper in their whole ſubſtance.

Sometimes the difference ariſeth in this, th
the naturall heat is either ſuffocated or diſſip
ted; this affection is ſomething dangerou
becauſe it is a difficult matter to reſtore the n
turall heat. In the cure of this reſtorative
muſt be notwithſtanding uſed; ſuch are Cin
mom, Nutmeg, *Species diaxyloaloes Aromatic
Roſatum.*

## *Of the pain of the womb.*

THere is no need to give other ſignes o
this then the complaint of the woman
it affects women that are both free, and women
tha

are with childe: It happens sometimes
om corroding humours, especially caused
ulcers or vitious flowers. The cure whereof
referred to these heads; sometimes it hap-
s from a distention caused either by some
rdled blood sticking in the cavity of the
omb, and then there is a copious flux of
lood out of the womb, and the pain is fixed
iefly about the orifice of the womb; the right
t and the bladder being affected by reason
the continuall desire of expelling forth the
mor. In the cure, first you must seek to
ssolve the clotted blood, which is done by
e use of Treacle dissolved in wine; and then
evacuation, which is performed with *A-*
*aric*, Aloes, with the juice of Savine, deco-
ion of Rosemary, with the flowers of Cheiri,
wine. Sometimes it is caused by the men-
ruous blood, when the vessels are more open,
the blood too thick; which happens through
e overmuch use of cold drink, especially
hen the woman is hot. The cure may be
ound in the cure of the suppression of the
owers. Sometimes it is caused by other vi-
ious humours collected in the concavity of
e womb, or adhering to the other vessels; &
hen these humours are to be removed with
purging and evacuating medecines. Some-
imes windy vapours are the cause hereof, ari-
ing from the heat of the vitious humours
caused by copulation. It is cured by things
that discusse the winde; to which purpose it

may

may not be amiſſe to uſe a Clyſter made o
Malmeſey and oyle of Nuts, of each three ou
ces, of Aquavitæ one ounce, of oyle of Junip
and diſtild Rue, of each two drams, & applie
warm; or a mixture of ſpirit of wine, and ſpi
rit of Nitre, of each half a dram, or two ſcru
ples, exhibited in ſpirit of wine; Sperma Cœti
with oyle of ſweet Almonds, or a plaiſter o
Caranna and Tachamahacca applied to th
navel. Sometimes it is occaſioned by the re
tention and corruption of the ſeed. For th
cure, look the Chapter of the ſuffocation of th
*Matrix*.

## *Of the ſuppreſſion of the Flowers.*

THe ſuppreſſion of the *Flowers* is the reten-
tion of the menſtrual blood, either by rea-
ſon of the narrowneſs of the veſſels, or through
ſome corruption of the blood. The ſignes are
evident from the relation of the woman; yet
if they are loath to confeſſe, it may be diſcern-
ed by this; For in virgins the ſuppreſſed
blood wanders up and down the veins, and be-
gets obſtructions, changing the colour of the
body, and cauſing Fevers. In women, becauſe
the blood is carried down to the womb, where
it begets many diſeaſes; it is diſtinguiſhed
from retention after conception, becauſe wo-
men with child find no alteration of affections
of the minde, and retain the native colour of
their bodies; and in the third moneth they
ſhall

perceive the motion and situation of the and lastly, the mouth of the Womb is ed up.

The causes of this distemper are the nar- ness of the veins, and the vitiousness of the od. The cure of this must be hastened, be- se this suppression if it stay long begets y more diseases, as Fevers, Dropsies, Vo- ing of blood, and the like; the cure is hard be of any continuance, and if it stay be- d the sixt moneth, it is almost incurable; cially if it happen through any perversion the neck of the womb; for then the Woman troubled with often swooning, and vomiting blood, and a paine seizes the parts of the lly, the back, and the back-bone, which is at- ded with a Fever, and the excrements of Belly and bladder are suppressed; a weari- s possesses the whole body, because of the fusion of the retained blood through the ole body, and especially the hips and thighs, cause of the sympathy of those parts with veins of the womb. In the first place, the ing of blood is commended; for the blood hich every moneth staies in the body, & sticks the veins, is to be provoked downward to womb; and therefore a vein is to be opened the heel, for so the plenty of blood is dimi- shed, and the motion of the blood is made ward the womb; if necessity requires that it uld be done more then once, one day a vein ust be opened in one thigh, and another day

in

in the other; and that which is opened for
vacuation muſt be firſt opened, & which is op
ned in the hamm or heel, muſt be done af
purgation, 3 or 4 or five dayes before the tim
that the accuſtomed evacuations of the Wom
ought to come down. Cupping-glaſſes al
are to be applyed firſt to the more remote pl
ces, as to the thighs; and then to the neer
parts, as to the hips, ligatures or bindings an
frictions, at the time of the coming down
the flowers, after purgation of the whole Bod
are not to be omitted. In the ſecond place th
matter is to be prepared, for which purpoſe, i
bodies troubled with flegme, the decoction
*Guaiacum*, with *Cretan Dittany*, doth much ava
without provoking ſweat. In the third plac
evacuation is to be made at ſeveral times. A
mong evacuating Medecines are commende
*Agaric*, Aloes, with the juice of *Sabina*, an
theſe pil; Take Aloes Succotrine three drams
the beſt myrrh one ſcruple, extract of *Calamu*
*Aromaticus*, *Carduus Benedictus*, Saffron, of eac
three drams; roots of *Gentian* and *Dittany*, o
each five grains; make them up with ſyrup o
Laurel berries, taking the quantity of one ſcru-
ple at evening before ſupper. In the fourth
place, by an obſtructing the humour by thoſe
things which provoke the flowers; of which
theſe are moſt to be commended, the decocti-
on of Roſemary with flowers of Cheiri, Peny-
royal water twice diſtilled, and mingled with
Cinamom water; Extract of Zedoar, Angelica,
and

and Castor, and the earth which is found in iron mines prepared in the same manner as steel, spirit of Tartar, the fat of an Eele, *Colubrina* with the distilled water of Savine: and in the 5th place, by the discussion of the dreggs and relicks that remaine by sudorificks, or things that provoke sweat, with a potion made of a Chalybeat decoction, with spirit of Tartar, &c.

The differences of this disease arise, partly from the obstruction of the veins of the womb, caused by a cold and thick blood, and thick slimy humors mixed with the blood, and coming either from some hot distemper of the womb, which dissipates the sharp and subtile humors, and leaves behinde the gross and earthy parts; or from the cold constitution of the liver and spleen; especially if at the time of the menstrual flux (at what time the flux of blood is more violent) those subtile humors happen to be dissipated, & then at the time of the monthly purgation the party affected feeleth a great pain in the loyns, and parts adjoyning; and if any thing come down, it is slimy whitish and blackish: the whole Body is possessed with a numness, the colour pale, a slow pulse, and raw urines. The cure is the same with the former, great care being taken of a gross and ill dyet.

There is another difference of this disease when it happens by compression, which arises from external causes, as the Northern wind, and long standing in cold water, which may be known from the relation of the sick person.

The blood in this case is to be drawn to the lower parts by Frictions and Baths; or from internal causes, as fatnes, or swelling of the womb, or of the lower parts; in which case Medecines must be applyed that asswage the swelling. There is another difference which is in the hardnes of the skin, which happens either from the first nativity, and then the disease is not easily taken away; or long after from some cold & dry distemper: concerning which look the former Chapters.

Another difference there is, when there happens a closing up of the skin, which is caused after cicatrising of an Ulcer, or by reason of some skin or membrane growing to the vessels of the womb: or by reason of frequent abortion; after which these veins to which the secundines adhere, do grow together so close that they cannot be afterwards opened.

Another difference of this disease there is, when it happens through want of blood, which is not generated either by reason of external causes, as famine, over much evacuation, issues, and such like; or through internal causes, as a frigid constitution of the principall parts, old age, and fevers; or when it is converted to other uses, as before full growth to the nourishment of the body: in women with child, to the nourishment of the birth: in those that give suck, to the increase of milk: and in fat people, to the augmentation of the fat: or when it is consumed either by external

all causes, as overmuch exercise, affrights, sadnesse, baths, overmuch sweating, do consume the serous quality of the blood; or through internall causes, as are hot kidney diseases, or over great evacuations in other parts of the body. Sometimes another difference of this disease proceeds from the thinnesse of the blood, which happens to women who in the winter time do too much heat their lower parts, by putting coals under their coats. For the cure thereof you must use refrigerating and moistning medecines.

## *The dropping of the Flowers, and the difficulty of their coming down.*

The dropping of the flowers is, when they are coming down for many dayes together drop by drop.

This happens both from externall causes, as over-hard labour, &c.

And sometimes from the drosinesse of the blood, the passage not being wide enough. For the cure of this, it is convenient to open a vein in the arm, with gentle purging, as in the former chapter.

Sometimes from the weaknesse of the retentive faculty, there being at that time great plenty, thinnesse and serosity of the blood. In this case there is no pain; Medecines that bind and corroborate the stomack here must have place.

The difficulty of the Flowers is when the come down with pain and trouble, either through defect in the veins, or in the blood The ſignes of this are gathered from the relation of the ſick perſon, who is then much troubled with pain in the head, ſtomack and loyns and lower parts of the body. And they do either flow altogether, or drop by drop, as in the former diſeaſe: it is a diſeaſe more incident to maids then married women, becauſe the veins of the womb are leſſe open in them then in thoſe who have brought forth children.

It happens ſometimes from a corruption of the blood, that is, from the droſſineſs and thickneſs thereof, and then the blood clots together; and there is great pain long before the flowers begin to come down. The cure of this is performed by attenuating medecines. Sometimes from the ſharpneſſe and acrimony of the blood, which proceeds from a mixture of ſharp humours with the body, and then the genital parts do itch. It is cured by thoſe medecines that temper the ſharpneſſe of the humour, as the four greater ſeeds, violets, and flowers of Nenuphar. Sometimes from windy vapours, and then the pain comes by intervals and is ſuddenly exaſperated, rumbling up and down; and when the wind is forth the pain ceaſed. The cure hereof is procured by evacuation of the matter, and diſpelling of the wind, as is before declared.

*Of the discolouring of the Flowers.*

The discolouring of the Flowers is when their right colour, which ought to be red, declines either to paleneſſe, whiteneſſe, greeneſſe, yellowneſſe, or blewiſhneſſe, through the defect or vitiouſneſſe of the blood.

The ſignes are apparent by the ſight of the blood; beſides that it is accompanied with ill ſmell; many times alſo it is the cauſe of fevers, trembling of the body, loathing of the meat, pain in the ſtomack, &c.

The differences of this diſeaſe conſiſt firſt in the vitiouſneſſe of the blood, which is cauſed through ſome diſtemper either of the whole body, or of ſome part thereof. Sometimes the blood is affected by reaſon of ſome ſtoppage thereof, and then the flowers are ſuppreſſed, which cauſeth pains in the breaſt, and ſtrong heating of the breaſt; and if the woman begin to amend, the blood flowes out with a ſtinking putrefaction, which continues till the eighth day; or it may be, becauſe the blood is fould by the womb, being full of excrements; and then you may perceive the ſignes of a foul womb.

Sometimes the difference of this diſeaſe conſiſts in the mixture of the blood with other vitious humours. The cure conſiſts in preparation and evacuation; but care muſt be had, that becauſe the thick humours need attenuation

attenuation and that over-attenuating things do melt the ſerous humour, that you therefore do not uſe over-attenuating things, as vinegar, &c.

Another difference is, when the flowers decline to a whitiſh colour, which proceeds from abundance of flegme, or from putrefaction, and then ulcers follow in the womb, & barrenneſs follows; unleſſe the womans flowers do happen to flow for ſeven or eight dayes together, by which the woman is freed from the diſeaſe, or elſe they break out to the parts above the groyn, without any tumour, and burſt forth a little above the Hypochondrion, and then the woman ſeldom lives: or elſe there wil appear after ſome few dayes a great ſwelling in the groyn, without a head of a red colour, becauſe the fleſh is there filled up with the blood.

When it inclines to yellowneſſe or greenneſſe, the diſtemper comes of choler; when to a blackneſſe and blewneſſe, from melancholy.

*Of the inordinate flux of the Flowers.*

THe diſorderly flux of the courſes is either the coming of them down before their time, or elſe the ſtoppage of them for ſome time after the uſuall courſe of nature. They come down ſometimes before their time, partly by reaſon of internall cauſes, and partly by

...tion of external causes, as falls, blows, ...such like casualities that open the veins: ...from the expulsive faculty of the womb ...much provoked; 1. by the plenty of blood, ...which is known by this, that the blood which is ...sent to the womb from all parts is fluid, and ...of its natural constitution; signes of a Plethora, or fulnesse of blood, are apparent in the woman. It is cured by blood-letting if the blood ...bound, by good diet, and frequent though ...gentle exercise. Secondly, it proceeds from ...acrimony and sharpnesse of the blood, which is known by the hot temper of the body, the blood it selfe is more thin and yellowish. It must be cured by evacuating medecines, as Rheubarb, and such things as temper the blood, whereof we have already spoken.

It comes also when the retentive faculty of the womb grows lank, which may be known by the looseness of the vessels of the womb, besides a moist & faint habit of the Body: in the cure beware of things which are too astringent; baths where in the force and strength of iron may be effectual may with safety be used. The subsistence and stay of the courses beyond the accustomed time, proceeds from a frustration of the expulsive faculty; as when there is smal store of blood, which is known by this, that the Woman is not troubled with the stay of the Courses; and especially, if she have over-exercised her self, or used a spare dyet before. Secondly, the thickness of the blood, which is

known by the whitenes and clammines there of. In the performance of the cure, you mu purge before too much blood be gathered to gether: next, the Courſes are to be attenuated for the performance of which *Catamint* and *Mercurialis* are to be moſt commended. In thi caſe ſcarification of the heels is not amiſs.

There is another difference of this diſeaſe which ariſes from the weaknes of the expelling faculty, cauſed either by the frigid diſtemper of the Womb, of which we have ſpoken alrea-dy; or by a kind of numneſs thereof, of which we ſhal ſpeak anon.

## *Of the over-abundance of the Courſes.*

THe over-much flux of the Courſes is ei-ther a more abundant, or a more laſting purgation of the Courſes, through ſome defect either in the Blood, or the Womb, or the veins of the womb.

The ſigns are evident, *viz.* want of appetite, crudities, a bad colour in the face, a ſwelling in the feet and reſt of the body, a waxing lean of the body; and in brief, a general ill habit of body.

The cure (if it be of any continuance) is dif-ficult; if it happen to an aged Woman, there is none at all. It requires a revulſion or drawing back of the blood, interception, and incraſſati-on or thickning therof, and a cloſing up of the veſſels by aſtringent medecines. Yet obſerve

that

that they must be stopt by degrees. To this effect you may take this powder.

R. Of the seed of *Hyoscyam.* alb. red Coral, of each half a dram, *Caphura* half a scruple, and give the quantity of half a dram at a time, powder of Amber, Dragons blood, Lap. *Hæmatit.* Red Coral, Lettice seed, of each one dram, Balaust two scruples, *Bole-armoniack* two drams given in three ounces of Plantain-water, Asses milk heated with steel. You may externally also apply a girdle made of the bruised leaves of *Helleboraster.*

Of this disease there are many differences; sometimes it happens from the blood which is derived from the bottom of the Womb, where for the most part lies the blackest and most clotted blood; or from the neck of the womb, which is more red, and fluid. Another difference ariseth from the plenty of blood, which appears by this, that the vessels are either broken, or much opened, especially in those Women who have had a stoppage of their Courses for a time, which presently break out again. The signes of this are evident; that is to say, a fulness of blood in the body; besides that the blood which comes forth easily curdles.

In the cure, you must have recourse to blood-letting, which if you do for evacuation, it must be done in the hepatick vein: if the Woman be weak, in *Salvatella* of both hands. In the next place the use of Cupping-glasses is to be commended, being applyed with scarification to

the

the back, &c. or without scarification to the Breast, being taken away again when the Woman is troubled with difficulty of breathing. In the third place, ligatures and frictions of the arms are to be used.

Another difference of this disease arises from a sharp blood, which is known by the gnawing of the humor upon the vessels. In the cure you must purge with syrup of Roses solutive, or with leaves of *Senæ*; a pessary of sows dung and Asses dung, which is made up with Plantain water, and the muscilage of the seed of Quinces, is here of use if need require.

Another difference arises from a serous and watry blood, for either the liver is weakned, or the veins so debilitated, that it cannot attract the serous or wheyie humor in the blood; in this case the blood flows not forth in such a quantity, nor is easily curdled; if a cloth be dipped in it, and then dryed in the shade, it presently discolours. In the cure hereof you must look to the rectifying of the weaknes of the veins and liver with convenient remedies, for which purpose the livers of Foxes, Calves, Hens, &c. are very good.

Sometimes from a rupture of the veins, which proceeds either from a fulnes of blood, or from causes that do vehemently stir up the blood, especially from hard labour: if it be needful, you must let blood, and apply conglutinating medecines.

Or from a gnawing of the vessels, which is

knovvn

known by this, that sometimes there flows with little blood, and that purulent, and full of wheyie, or serous humour. It arises from sharp and corrupt blood, and sometimes from the use of sharp medecines. Among the astringent medecines, the root of *Filipendula* is much to be commended, or a decoction of the same root.

## *Of the Whites & Gonorrhea in women.*

THe Whites is an inordinate eruption of an excrementitious humour collected together through some vitiousnesse of the blood. It affects women chiefly, and sometimes also Virgins, of which there are examples: yet it is more often in women, especially if they be of a moist constitution, and live an idle and delicate life, eating such things as are cold and moist. Old women also are affected herewith through the abundance of flegme, and the weakness of the concoctive faculty.

It differs from the Gonorrhea, because in that the seminal matter is white, and thicker, and flows by longer intervals, and issues forth in a lesser quantity from a nocturnal pollution; for that is joyned with venereal imaginations, and onely happens in the time of sleep. It differs from the discolouring of the flowers; for they, though not exactly, do always observe their times of flowing. Besides, they happen not to women with childe, or such whose

course

courſes are ſtopped. It differs from the putrid humour that iſſues from the ulcers of the womb, becauſe that is joyned with the ſignes of an ulcer, and the putrefaction is thicker and whiter; if it be mattrie it is coloured with blood, and iſſues forth with pain.

The cure of this muſt be haſtened, becauſe in a ſhort time it endangers the making of women barren, cauſing them to be lean, to fall into a conſumption, melancholy, the dropſie, fall of the womb, ſwoonings and convulſions; which is the cauſe that though it be not hard to be cured in the beginning, yet it is afterwards very difficult: for by this means the whole body accuſtoms it ſelf to ſend forth its excrements this way, and the womb being now weakned gathers excrements apace.

Sometimes it proceeds from the whole body, and then you may perceive the ſignes of an ill humour through the whole body. In the cure of this you muſt avoid blood-letting, for that the bad humours muſt not be recalled to defile the blood; beſides that the diſeaſe is a ſufficient weakning and conſuming of the body. The humour is diſcuſſed by the decoction of Guaiacum and China, and Lentisk wood. For the drying up of the humour the root of *Filipendula* doth very much conduce. For aſtringent medecines you may uſe chiefly the powder of dead mens bones, the aſhes of Capons dung in rain-water. The patient muſt avoid ſleeping upon her back, leſt the heat of

the

the Lungs should carry the humours towards the womb, Frictions also of the upper parts, for the diversion of the humour.

Sometimes it is caused by the womb it self, and then there will appear signes of the affection of the womb, and the flux is not so great. For the cure of this, suffumigations of Frankincense, Ladanum, Mastick and Santalum are very requisite.

## *Of the Green-sickness.*

The Green-sickness is a changing of the colour of the face into a green and pale colour, proceeding from the rawness of the humors. The signes of this appear in the face, to which may be added a great pain in the head, difficulty of breathing, with a palpitation of the heart, a small and thick beating of the arteries in the neck, back, and temples; sometimes inordinate Fevers through the viciousness of the humours, loathing of meat, vomiting, distention of the Hypochondriack parts, by reason of the reflux of the menstruous blood to the greater vessels, a swelling of the whole body by reason of the abundance of humours, or of the thighs and legs above the heels, by reason of the abundance of serous humours.

The cause is the crudity and rawness of the humour, and quantity withall, arising from the suppression of the courses, through the natural

tural narrowneſſe of the veſſels, or through a acquired narrowneſſe of the veſſels by the ea ing of oatmeal, chalk, earth, nutmegs, an drinking of vinegar; or from the obſtructio of the other bowels. Hence ariſes an ill con coction in the bowels, and the humours ar carried into the habit of the body, or becom habitual thereto.

The cure is performed by the letting o blood, eſpecially in the heel; if the diſeaſe b of any continuance, by purgation, prepa ration of the humour being firſt conſidered; which is performed by the decoction of Guaia cum, with Cretan Dittany; purging of the humour is performed with Agarick, Aloes Succotrin, with the juice of Savine; for the un obſtructing of the humour, prepared ſteel, the root of Scorzonera, Bezoar ſtone, and oyle of Chryſtall; in diet, vinegar is utterly to be a voided.

## *Of the Suffocation of the Matrix.*

THe ſignes of the ſuffocation of the womb, are a weatines of the whole body, with a weakneſs of the thighs; a palenes and ſadneſs of the face; a nauſeouſneſs, though ſeldom vomiting; ſometimes a loathing and diſtaſt of meat, and that ſometimes with a grumbling and noiſe in the belly, and ſometimes with out.

The ſigns of the preſent diſeaſe are, that when the

vapours are carried up to the heart, and do stop the vital spirits, a light swooning [illegible] the pulse changes, & is little, the body [illegible] cold, all the spirits flying up into the [illegible] the vapour being thrust up to the head [illegible] chaps, the chaps are many times set fast, [illegible] Patient seeming to be stifled; the motion of [illegible] breast and Diaphragme is disturbed and [illegible]dred, so that the breath is almost stopt, the [illegible] living only by transpiration. Some[illegible] there is joyned with it a kinde of uterine [illegible] with talking and anger; sometimes it [illegible] other madnesses; sometimes the Woman [illegible] into a dead sleep, which makes her seem as [illegible] she were dead.

It differs from the Epilepsie, because in that [illegible] convulsive motions are more general; nor is [illegible] any memory of those things which hap[illegible] about them after the Fit; the pulse is great, [illegible] mouth of the party affected fomes with a [illegible]: it differs from the Apoplexie, because in [illegible] the fit comes suddenly without any notice, [illegible] the Patient is affected with a kinde of snort[illegible], and there is such a resolution of the parts, [illegible] they feel not although they be pricked: [illegible] a Syncope, in that there are no signs when [illegible] fit wil be, the pulse ceases to the apprehen[illegible], & the Patient is troubled with cold sweats. They differ from dead people by sneezing, which may be provoked by putting some[illegible]ing for that purpose into the nose.

The

The cauſe of this is a venemous, ſubtile, a thin vapour, piercing in one moment throu the whole body, and carried up from the m ter in the womb, corrupted after a pecul manner either by it ſelf, or from exter means; ſuch are perfumes, anger, fear, &c. a not only aſcending through the veins, but a through all the other breathing holes, and cret paſſages of the body.

The cure is doubtful if it have poſſeſſed o Women for any time, for it begets weakne conſumes the ſtrength, and ſhews abundance humors; or if it poſſeſſeth Child-bearing W men, either after a difficult travel, or after an bortion; or if it poſſeſſeth Women with child, cauſe it induces a fear of abortion; there is mo hope, if the act of reſpiration be not too mu impeded, and if the Fits do not return to often.

The cure regards firſt the time of the fit, b ing performed firſt by means of interceptio which may be done by binding the belly u der the navel with a girdle made of t ſkin of a Hart kild in the very act of copul tion. Secondly, by keeping the natural ſpiri awaked and rouzed up, by painful frictions, pulling the hairs of the privities with violenc and ſuffumigations made with Partridge fe thers burnt, as alſo Eel-skins, and the appl cation of Aſſa-fœtida and oyle of Tartar the mouth. Thirdly, by way of revulſion the humour, by Frictions and Clyſters diſpe

lin

the windes, and the application of Cup-glasses with much flame first to the thighs, then to the hips, putting sweet things in the privities; such as are oyle of Sivet half a ruple, oyle of Nutmegs one scruple. Fourth-by discussion of the humour, which is per-med inwardly by the oyle of white Amber, the powder of Wall-nut flowers, extract Castor; externally by an Emplaster of fat of a black Heifer, Sclarea boyld butter, adding to it a sufficient quantity of chamahacca and Caranna: After the fit is evacuation is to be regarded, first with gation; for which purpose it will not be isse to use these ensuing pills, Take Siler ountain, penyroyall, madder, the innermost t of Cassia pipe, Pomegranat kernels, Piony ots, and Calamus, of each three drams, Mus-, and Spike of India, of each half a dram; make pils thereof with the juyce of Mug-rt, of which she may take every day, or eve-other day before supper. If the disease pro-d from the termes, let the woman affected e an ounce of Agarick powdered in wine honied water, or a dram of Agnus Castus wdered with an ounce of hony of Roses: the mb is also to be strengthened by the inter-ll and externall application of such things resist the malignity of the disease; among ich are numbred Fæcula, Brioniæ and Ca-. The difference of this disease consists in , that sometimes it happens that it is oc-

casioned by the retention of the seed, which
known by this, that the symptoms of the di
ease are more violent; and after the fit is pa
there flowes out of the womb a matter like
that of the seed. It is cured by evacuation
the seed, such as are Rue, and Agnus Castu
and anointing with odoriferous salves, esp
cially if the woman be to live without the u
of man,

If it come from the suppression of th
terms, which is known by the courses bein
mingled with a melancholy blood, take pow
dered Agarick, a dram of Piony seeds, or th
weight of a dram and a half of Triphe
magna.

But to conclude this Chapter, take this for
secret, that for a married Woman in case
the present suffocation, there is nothing bett
then for the man to anoint the top of his Ya
with a little oyl of Gilliflowers & oyl of swe
Almonds together, and so to lye with her; so
this assuredly brings down the Matrix again.

## *Of Barrennesse.*

BArrennesse is an impotence to conceiv
coming from defect either of the Gen
tals, or of the blood, or of the menstruou
blood.

First, through the defect of the Genitals, e
ther by the closing up of the Orifice of th
womb, which may be cut and opened by An
o

through the narrowneſſe of the parts, for ſo
y will not admit the yard; or by reaſon of
e Ulcers or Excreſcences in the neck of the
mb.

Or by reaſon of ſome fault in the ſeed, ei-
r the woman being too young, or too old,
through ſome diſtemper in the veſſels dedi-
ed to generation; and then the woman per-
ives very little or no pleaſure in the act of
pulation. The cure of this is referred to
e chapter of the Diſtempers of the womb.

Or when there is not that due proportion
f ſeed which ought to be in both parties,
hich chiefly ariſes from the uſe of thoſe
ings that extinguiſh barrenneſſe, as Mint,
ue, Camphire.

Or from inchantments, and then the man
nnot lie with his wife, or though he ſhould,
e cannot emit the ſeed; againſt which, it is
firmed that the drinking a draught of cold
ater that drops from the mouth of a young
one horſe as he drinks, and ſaved in a little
eſſel, is very potent.

Or when the womb doth not draw the ſeed
hich is ejected, and that by reaſon of ſome
old and moiſt diſtemper; in which caſe all
orrow, anger, and much ſleep, are to be a-
oided: as alſo the eating of milk, freſh
heeſe, and any thing that is made of dough.
Neither is ſhe to eat Endive, Spinage, Beets,
ettice, Nuts, Cherries, Purſlane, Onions,
Garlick, or ſuch like; as much hurtful to her

are much broath, vinegar, and fat fleſh. In next place the womb muſt be cleanſed from ver abundance of moiſture, ſuch are ſyrup Wormwood, with the decoction of Ha tongue, Fenel, Cumin and Anis-ſeed.

After this, take once every fourteen daye dram of bleſſed pils, faſting five hours af them.

Take alſo of theſe following pils, *R.* Ladanum, Agarick, Wax, and ſheeps ſuet try of which you may make pils to take two three of them every morning; or uſe this co fection: Take ſhaven Ivory, Aſh keyes, yello and wild Rape-ſeed, Siler mountain, with r and white Behen, of each one dram, Cinamo Galangall, long pepper, Cloves and Mac Balſam wood, Roſemary flowers, Blattæ B zantiæ, gentle Marjoram, penyroyal, of ea four ſcruples, Baulme, Bugloſſe, Citron pils, each two ſcruples, Pearls one ſcruple, Mus two grains, white ſugar four and twenty our ces; ſeeth this with Malmeſey, and make there of a confection.

Or becauſe of ſome diſeaſes in the parts where note, that too much fatneſſe of the Cal doth cloſe the mouth of the womb: ſuch wo men muſt not ſleep much, eſpecially in the da time; they muſt uſe ſtrong Clyſters that ar warm and dry, and purge often.

Or when the womb doth not attract th ſeed when it is caſt in; which proceeds from a moiſt intemperance, which is by the looſneſs of

the fibres of the womb, ſo that the wombcan
contract it ſelf; which is cured as in the
diſtemper. Or by reaſon of the thick-
of the womb; for then the blood which
reaſes the ſeed does not ſlide down to that
ce. The cure hereof requires a thin diet,
ging and ſweating; or by reaſon of the
perineſs thereof, which happens by reaſon
the running of the whites in women: The
e whereof conſiſts in the ſtopping of the
ites, which hath been already treated of;
by reaſon of the gaping of the Orifice, which
been occaſioned either by difficult birth,
by ſome abortion. The cure is performed
aſtringent medecines, among which the
ieſeſt are the fomentation of Lentisk and
rtle; or by reaſon of ſome ſudden cough
ſneezing immediatly after copulation, by
ich the ſeed is ſhaken forth. Or when the
mb doth not alter the ſeed that is caſt in,
rough an immoderate cold diſtemper.

Sometimes through heat, and then it would
requiſite to avoid hot aire, and keeping the
rts about the womb compleat, or the eat-
g of hot meats and ſpices; purge after blood-
ting in the Baſilick vein of the right hand,
ith *Electuary hom. de Epithymo*, & juice of roſes,
each two drams and a half, whey four oun-
s, mix them wel together, and take them in
e morning, ſleeping one, and faſting four
urs upon it. Purge alſo with *Triphera Sa-
enica* and *Rheubarb*, with potions prepared

and mixed with syrup of Roses, Violets a
Endive. Take *Pistacia*, *Pingles*, *Eringus*, of e
half an ounce, of Saffron a dram, *Lignum*
*loes*, *Galangal*, *Caryophyllata Mace*, red and wh
*Beben*, Baulme-flowers, of each four scrupl
shavings of Ivory, and Cassia rindes, of e
two scruples, syrup of Ginger confected twe
ounces, white sugar six ounces; seeth these tog
ther with the syrup in 12 ounces of Baul
water, untill it be all boyled away: when it
cold, put some more water to it and stir the
together: and last of all, mix with it a scrup
and a half of Musk and Amber: of this co
serve let the woman take thrice a day, to wi
in the Morning, an houre before supper, and
hour after dinner.

Or it proceeds from obstruction of the flow
ers, in which case first let blood in the Basil
vein, then purge with *Opoponax*, and *Hie*
*Composita*, of each half a dram, to be made u
in seven pils, to be taken in the morning slee
ing upon them an hour and a half, with
draught of sugard water five hours after; O
with a potion of syrup of Vinegar compound
ed, syrup of *Eupatorie*, of each three quarte
of an ounce, Fever Mugwort, and *Elecampan*
roots of each an ounce, and mix them toge
ther: then she may put up into the womb
pessary of musk, Amber, Aloes Wood, an
Ashkeyes, of each three grains, Saffron half
scruple, Hares-rennet as much as suffices, whic
being made up like a good big Tent she mus
keep a whole day in her body. O

# Of the bringing up of Children, and of their Diseases.

## Of the Diseases of the Head.

THe Diseases common to Children are first certain little ulcerous risings, chiefly in the Head; sometimes in the whole body; they arise from some vitious humor either collected in the womb, or out of the womb, by reason of the badness of the milk containing a serous, salt, and nitrous quality; if there be no ill to be suspected, the humor may be driven forth by giving the Child some syrup of *Fumarie*, or Harts-horn burnt: the Nurse is to be purged, and the matter offending to be tempered with syrup of Borage, or Fumarie; if there be much corruption under the crust of the scab, the head of the Child is to be bathed with some softning decoction, & then to be anointed with some drying Ointments.

Sometimes they are troubled with an inflammation of the head, with which is joyned a hollowness in the fore-part of the head, and in the eyes; it may arise from the milk, if the Nurse be subject to drink over-much strong drink: in the Cure you must beware of applying things which are too refrigerating.

They

They are also many times affected with a kind of *Epilepsie*, which proceeds sometimes from extraordinary frights, from milk that lies corrupted in the stomack, and sometimes from worms moving themselves in the guts; and sometimes it is the consequent of other Diseases. The cure is to be observed partly in the fit, and partly after the fit: the Smaragd-stone, and the hoof of a wild Alx put into the left ear are very profitable, and take good effect; Vomiting also, and this Emplaster of white Amber, Frankincense, and Mastick, of each a dram and a half, *Galbanum*, *Opoponax*, of each a scruple, *Visci* of an Oak two drams, Ambergreize six grains, Musk three grains, seed of male *Peonie* half a dram, *Ladanum* one dram and a half, a little Oile of Nutmeg, and sprinkled with the dust of Cubebs; the fore-part of the head may be also anointed with Oyl of white Amber. Fears and startings in the Childs sleep, which being occasioned from the putrid vapours which are carried up with the animal spirits, and arise from the stomack; therefore they happen to Infants that suck greedily: in the cure care must be taken that the Child do not fil it self too unreasonably, and provide that good & sound milk may be generated, and that the Children be not put to sleep upon a ful stomack: the stomack of the Child anointed neer the orifice with Oyl of Quinces and mastick, and Oyl of Nutmeggs. Before sleep dissolve a little roll of *Diamoschus* in milk,

milk, and give the Child; and unleſs the child be over much troubled with heat, you may give it a little Treacle once in a week; over-much watching or wakefulneſs, which is occaſioned by ſharp vapours which ariſe out of the ſtomack by reaſon of the badneſs of the milk; ſometimes it is occaſioned by Fevers, and pain of ſome peculiar parts; there is nothing better then to anoint the ſoles of the Childs feet with marrow, which hath no danger in it, rather then to give the child ſtronger *Opiates*. A looking a ſquint, which in new-born children is cured by putting a candle oppoſite to the place where the Child caſts its eyes.

Moiſtneſs of the ears by reaſon of the moiſtneſs of the head, which gather quantity of humors together: the cure of this muſt not be over haſty; yet the urine of children diſtilled, and dropt into the ear, is a very approved Remedy.

### *Bigneſs and ſwelling of the Head in little Children.*

SOmetimes in children that are newly born the head grows to an extraordinary bigneſs, which comes to paſs either by reaſon of abundance of water contained in the ſame, which water is contained either between the skin and the *Pericranium*, or between the bone and the *pericranium*, or between the bone and the membranes called the *dura Mater*, and the *Pia Mater*.

Or

Or by reason of abundance of vapours gathered together between the bones and the skin of the head, which cause the head to grow to such an extraordinary bigness that it causes often times the death of the child.

If water be gathered together between the bone of the head and the membranes of the brain, it causes a giddeness and Epilepsie to the Infant, without being able to take any rest. For the cure of the windy affection you may use fomentations, in case the wind be contained only between the skin and the *Pericranium*; for which purpose you may take of the leaves of Sage, Betonie, *Egrimony*, *Calamus*, and *Origan*, of each a handful, Anis-seed, and Fenel-seed, of each two drams, Camomil Flowers, Melilot, and Red Roses, of each one handful; boyl all these in common water, adding to it a little wine, and thereof make a Fomentation for the part affected, which may be assisted with a plaister made of Oyl of Anis-seeds, and bitter Almonds, of each one ounce, Oyl of Camomil an ounce and a half, Laurel and Juniper-berries, of each two drams, Anis-seeds, and Fennel-seeds, of each one dram and a half, of the best Wine a pint; boyl them to the consumption of the wine, adding to the rest half an ounce of Venice Turpentine, and as much wax as is sufficient: As for the watry distemper, though it be difficult to cure, yet you must try this Fomentation to digest the humor: Take Wormwood, Betony, creeping

Time,

Time, Penyroyal leaves, of each a handful, red Roſe leaves, and leaves of Stœchas, a little handful, Cypres Nut, Orange flowers, and *Florentine orrice*, of each two drams, boyl them all in a lye made of Vine twiggs and ſtalks; after which you may uſe this plaiſter. Take the powder of Betony, Sage, and Wormwood, of each two drams, Oyl of Camomil and Roſes, of each 2 ounces, *Unguenti comitiſſæ* one ounce, as much wax as is ſufficient: but if theſe Remedies profit nothing, the only means left is to open the head.

## *Of the diſeaſes of the Eyes, Ears, and Noſes in Children.*

MAny times children are troubled with a light inflammation in their eyes, with a certain gum and thicknes which hinders them from opening the eye-lid: the moſt preſent remedies are either for the Nurſe to waſh the eyes with a little of her breaſt milke, or elſe with a little Plantain and Roſewater mixt together.

Sometimes the noſtrils are ſo ſtopt, that they are not able to draw their breath but with much pain. For the cure of which the Nurſe muſt moiſten a linen cloth in a little ointment of Roſes, or a little very good *Pomatum*, till the hard matter within be diſſolved.

Many times there flows a moiſt humor from their heads, which happens to thoſe who have moiſt

moiſt brains. In the cure of this, it muſt be the care of the Nurſe to cleanſe the eares both within and without; afterwards let her drop into them a little oyle of bi ter Almonds, and hony of Roſes mixt together.

*Of certain Vlcers in childrens mouths.*

THere do many times grow a certain kinde of ulcers in childrens mouths: For the cure of which the Nurſe in the firſt place muſt uſe a good and ſound diet, then muſt the ulcers themſelves be rub'd with a little *Mel Roſatum*, and ſyrup of violets, with a drop or two of Plantain water; or you may waſh them with half an ounce of Roſe-water, or Plantain water, in which put half a dram *D'aigret* of vitriol; if they be very red and inflamed, take Brambles, flowers of Pomegranates, Roſes, Santall, of each two drams, Alum half a dram, boyle them in water, afterwards ſtrain them to the quantity of three ounces; in which diſſolve halfe an ounce of ſyrup of Mulberries.

If they be white, take Amber, Frankincenſe wood, Cypreſſe nuts, Pomegranate flowers, of each two drams, flowers of Roſes and Myrtles, of each half a handful; boyl them in water to the conſumption of foure ounces, wherein diſſolve an ounce and a half of hony of Roſes.

Of

## *Of certain other Tumours called Paroulis and Espoulis.*

*Paroulis* is a little ſwelling, red and inflamed, and is ingendred commonly of a hot cholerick blood, or elſe from a ſalt flegme that fals down upon the gums, cauſing not only the gums, but the neck and chaps to be ſwelled. For the cure hereof you may anoint the gums with this Ointment: Take of *Amili* 11 drams, powder of *Tragacant* one dram, burnt Alum one ſcruple, Roſewater one ounce; if there be any inflammation, rub the gums with a muſcilage made of the ſeed of Quinces, made with Roſe-water, and Plantain-water, adding to it a little ſyrup of *Jujubes*. If the ſwelling be obſtinate, bring it to a ſuppuration with figgs, Raiſins, *Jujubes*, Licoraſs, and French barley wel boyled; when it is opened and lanced, cleanſe and dry it with *mel Roſatum*, ſyrup of Roſes and Cherries.

The *Eſpoulis* is a little excreſcence of fleſh hapning in the lungs between the teeth, but moſt commonly the great teeth. *R.* The root of Bugloſs an ounce and half, Plantain, Agrimony a handful, whole Barley a ſmal handful, red Roſes half a handful, Pomgranate flowers two drams, four Dates, a dram and a half of Liquoriſs; make a decoction and ſtraine it, and then add to it an ounce of ſyrup of Roſes, and Pomgranates to waſh the place affected,

you

you alſo may waſh it with this Remedy. Take of the juice of Pomgranates and Quinces, of each half an ounce, juice of Berberies and Lettice, of each two drams, with a little of the decoction of Lentils, and red Roſes.

### *Of the two ſtrings under the Tongue of a Child.*

THere is one of theſe ſtrings or ligaments which appears reaching from the bottom of the tongue, and extending it ſelf to the top of the tongue; this muſt be cut off firſt with a pair of cizers, and the place rubbed with a lit-little Moſche ſalt.

There is another Ligament which riſes from the root and extendeth it ſelf to the middle of the tongue, which is more hard and large, which hinders the tongue either from being ſtretched out, or to be moved in the mouth. The cure hereof belongs wholly to the Chirurgeon.

### *Of the Cough in Children.*

THe Cough in Children comes either from the diſtillation of ſome cold and ſharp humour diſtilling from the brain: if the humor be cold; the child is alſo troubled with a viſcous and ſlimy flegme which lies in the paſſages of eſpiration: if the humor flowing down be hot, the face of the Infant will be red;

red; if it come of a cold humor, the child muſt be kept indifferently warme, giving it a little oyl of ſweet Almonds, and ſugar candy; it wil not be amiſs alſo to waſh the feet of the child in ale wherein certain *Cephalick* herbs have been boyled, and after that to anoint the plants or ſoles of his feet with Geeſes fat.

The breaſt of the child may be alſo rubbed with oyl of ſweet Almonds, and freſh butter, and upon this put little linnen clothes ſomething warm. If it be accompanied with any viſcous matter or flegme, you may give the Infant a little ſyrup of Maidenhaire, or ſyrup of Liquoriſs and Hyſop mingled together; or give the Infant this water to drink: Take of Rain water, and Fountain water, of each a pint, white ſugar one ounce, honey an ounce, Vinegar two drams; boyl them all together, and clarifie them, and let the Infant drink it.

## *Of breeding Teeth.*

IN breeding Teeth the difficulty and paine that the child endures is eaſily perceived; and whether that be the thing which the child is afflicted with, may be eaſily gueſſed at by the time of breeding teeth, which is about the ſeventh moneth; beſide the Infant is perceived to be often putting his fingers in his mouth, and the Nurſe perceives the infant to gripe her breaſts hard, *&c.* the place where the teeth are about to break out looks white, watchings, and

the

the ſenſe of a very great paine. The ſwelling gums are to be anointed with Hares brains boyled, or the fat of it. If they be inflamed, waſh them with oyl of Roſes, and white wax, and the juice of Nightſhade: if they be exulcerated, anoint them with butter that hath no ſalt in it, with a little honey, and powder of Frankincenſe.

### *Of the inflammation of the Navel-ſtring in Infants.*

SOmetimes after the binding of the Navel-ſtring, it happens to exulcerate: For the cure uſe an Emplaſter of *Pompholyx*, or anoint it with oyl of Roſes, and a little *Populeon*.

### *Of the Worms.*

OFtentimes children are extreamly troubled; they are generated of a viſcous and flegmie humour; they are ſometimes round, and then commonly the children are troubled with a Fever, and grow lean, their appetite fails them, they ſtart in their ſleep, they have a dry cough joyned with it, with a ſtinking breath, and an ill colour in their faces, the eyes hollow and dark, with a kind of irregular Fever, which comes three or four times a night, and they often rub their noſes; if they be little worms, they have alwayes a deſire to go to the ſtoole, and their excrements

ments are very purants. If the Infant be young the Nurſe muſt be ſure to keep a good dyet, abſtaining from all raw fruits, peaſe and Beans, and all milkie things, and any thing that ſhall be of a hard concoction: next you may lay a plaiſter of the maſs of Pils *ſine quibus* half a dram, powder of Wormwood one dram, myrrh and Aloes, of each two ſcruples, meale of *Lupines* a dram and a half, the gall of an Ox as much as ſufficeth; if the Infant be any thing grown, you may give him in a little broth a ſmal quantity of Harts-horn. You may alſo give the Child if he be able to take it, a little of the decoction of Pourpied, and the ſhavings of Harts-horn, adding to it a little of the juice of Citron.

## *Of the Convulſion in Infants.*

THe ſignes of Convulſion are the hanging backward of the head, inſomuch that the hinder part of the head ſeemeth to touch the ſhoulders; ſometimes the head and the neck hang ſo far forward, that the chin touches the breaſt.

The cure of this, if it come of too great abundance of humors, let the aire wherein the child is nurſed be hot and dry, and exerciſe much; let her not ſleep long, eſpecially after dinner; and let her dyet be rather drying, then any way moiſt. If the child do not ſuck, he muſt avoid meats that do trouble the head, and fil it

with vapours, or ſlimy meats that may ſtop the paſſages of the veins; ſweet things are very hurtful, but honey and water wherein a little Sage and Betony have been boiled, it wil not be amiſs to give him: if purgation be needful, let the Nurſe rather then the child purge, which may be performed with *Caſſia*, or *Manna*.

If the Child be any thing bigg, let his belly be kept looſe by giving him a little water wherein *Sena* hath been ſteeped for four and twenty hours, tempering therewith a very ſmal quantity of the juice of Citron; or you may give him a little of the powder of *Diacarthamum* in the pap of an apple.

If the Convulſion come of drineſs, or emptines or by reaſon of ſome great evacuation, flux of the belly, vomiting, hunger, or the like, the child muſt be nurſed in an aire more moiſt then dry, & his dyet muſt be the ſame. The beſt and moſt approved Remedy is to apply a cautery in the hinder part of the head to the nook of the neck, between the ſecond and third *Vertebræ*, which may be done to new-born Children; Frictions alſo of the leggs, backbone and thighs, are very profitable; as alſo Cupping glaſſes applied to the thighs and leggs.

If the Convulſion come by reaſon of the Worms, you may give him this Clyſter. Take of ſimple Hydromel 4. ounces, new butter one ounce, powdered Aloes half a dram, and make a clyſter. Or you may give him two drams of Earth-worms killed, dryed, and powdered

powdered, ſugar powdered one ounce, and let the child take two drams of it every day in a ſpoonful of Lettice water.

If any venemous vapour be the cauſe hereof, let him take ſix grains of Treacle, or Mithridate in Pourpied water.

### *Of the ſwelling of the Hypochondria in Infants.*

WHich cauſeth children by reaſon of the narrowneſs of the mouth of the ſtomack to be troubled with a difficulty of breathing: it ariſeth from the greedineſs of the Infant, which either ſucks too great a quantity of milk, or of other meats. The inward cure of this is performed by adminiſtring the powder of the root of *Orrice*, or *Pæonie*.

### *Of Coſtiveneſs in Children.*

THis proceeds from the unskilfulneſs of the Nurſe in the dyeting of the child, or from a cold and dry diſtemper of the guts, or from the hot and dry diſtemper of the bowels; in this caſe the belly may be well looſened with *Caſſia*, or with a liniment compoſed of new oyl of ſweet Almonds, Gooſe fat, May-butter, Ointment of *Dialthea*, of each two drams, *Colocynth.* gr. 16, one ſcruple of ſalt, *Species Hieræ* one ſcruple, *Diagridion* 4 grains, make of this anointment, and anoint the navel.

Or it proceeds from a viſcous flegme which wraps about and holds the dreggs, which may be remedied by a ſuppoſitory of Mouſe-dung and Goats ſuet; or by the uſe of an Emplaſter of Aloes, Buls gall, Myrrh, and May-butter, to be laid upon the navel.

## *Of Looſeneſs in Children.*

LOoſeneſs of the belly happens either in the time of Teeth breeding, or out of the time; in the time of breeding teeth, either by reaſon of the corruption of the nutriment, or by reaſon of over-much watching through the pain of the teeth, or by reaſon of a Fever, and ſome unnatural heat; it muſt not be ſuddenly ſtopt if it be not overcopious, and that the infant can indure it; the belly muſt be afterward cleanſed with Roſes *ſolutive*, and afterward ſtopped, great obſervation being had whether the cauſe come from a hot or cold diſtemper.

## *Of Burſtneſs in Children.*

BUrſtneſs happens to children either by reaſon that the *peritonæum* is burſt through crying, or falling, or ſplaying with the thighs: For the cure whereof the child muſt be kept quiet and ſtil from crying; upon which after the part affected is wel bound up, you may give the child inwardly of the eſſence of the greater Conſound one ſpoonful, with two drops of Balſam of *ſal Gemma*. You may al-

ſo

ſo foment the place with a Fomentation made
the roots of the greater Conſound, and *Oſ-*
*di regulis*, the bark of Elme, and *Fraxi*, of
h half an ounce, the leaves of Plantain, Mul-
in, Centinode, Herniar, Horſetail, flowers of
momil, red Roſes, and Meliot, of each a
ndful and a half, Baluſt, Cypreſs nuts, and
rons, of each two drams; put theſe into two
ts, and boyl them in equal parts of ſour
ne, and Smiths water, for a Fomentation to
uſed for a quarter of an hour; then you may
y on a Plaiſter of the red drying Ointment
ven ounces, powder of Maſtick, *Olibanum*,
d *Sarcocol*, Cypreſs-nuts, of each one dram,
ith a little wax and oyl of Maſtick to make
laiſter, which muſt be put upon the place
ected, and bound down with a little pil-
w.

Sometimes this buyſtneſs proceeds from a
try humor abounding in the *Abdomen*, which
ſcending into the Codds cauſeth them to
el; for which you may uſe with good ſucceſs
is Ointment: Take of *Unguent. Comitiſſ.* and
e red drying Ointment, of each two ounces,
igeons dung half an ounce, live Sulphure three
ams, powder of Lawrel berries, and muſtard-
ed, of each a dram, oyle of Dill, and Venice
urpentine of each 3 drams, wax as much as
fficeth: this is alſo an extraordinary Remedy
r the Burſtneſs proceeding from wind.

## *Of the Inflammation of the Navell.*

THe inflammation of the Navel ariſeth when the blood gathers thither by reaſon of ſome external hurt; the danger is very great if it ſhould apoſtemate, and ſo the guts fall down; and therefore ſuppuration muſt be hindred as much as may be.

## *Of the jutting forth of the Navel.*

THis differs from the inflammation, becauſe here the Navel doth not give way to the touch, neither is the colour of the skin changed, neither is there any very great pain or pulſe, unleſs the inteſtines are very much fallen; it proceeds from the ill binding thereof at firſt, which is incurable; or when a greater portion then needs of the Navel ſtring is left. Secondly, from a laxation of the *Peritonæum*, and then the tumor is equal, nor doth the Navel jut forth very far: in the cure hereof you muſt let the child abſtain from all windy meats and from much crying. Sometimes it is occaſioned by the rupture of the *Peritonæum*, and then the ſwelling is hardly perceived when the child lies upon his back, but increaſeth and ſwels forward when he walks, ſits, cries and bawls: in the cure of this the moſſe that grows upon the wild Prune-tree is very much commended; or

you

you make little Swathbands of Leather, and anoint them with *Oxycroceum.*

### *Of the Stone in the Bladder.*

THis is known by the coming forth of the Urine by drops and with paine, which is ſometimes unmixed, ſometimes containing a kinde of ſerous humor, ſometimes dyed with a little blood; it is produced either by the milk which is ingendered of meats that do increaſe the Stone, or through a hot diſtemper of the Liver, which attracts the Chylus, and ſends it unaltered to the bladder: for the Cure you muſt uſe Baths, among which this is commended to anoint the bladder; withall take Oyl of Scorpions, oyl of bitter Almonds, Conies-greaſe, and Hens greaſe, of each an ounce and a half, and of the juice of Parietarie; Or take *ſal* Tartar one ounce, parſley-water a pint, mix them through a fine paper rubd over with the rindes of Oranges, and give a ſmal quantity thereof.

### *Of the not holding of the Urine.*

THis ariſeth either from the muſcle which ſhuts the orifice of the Bladder, which is ſo diſpoſed that it is looſed upon the leaſt exciting of the Urine, and grows ſo into a habit, that it many times accompanies them to their graves; or from the ſtone in the bladder, or from the weakneſs of the ſphincter proceeding

ding from a cold & moiſt diſtemper; which is cured partly by the good dyet of the Nurſe, and partly by convenient Medecines, among which a bath made of Sulphure, Nitre, and the leaves of Oak, is exceeding good.

## *Of the Intertrigo.*

WHen the little skin in the hips is ſeparated from the true skin; it ariſes firſt from the ſharpneſs of the Urine, eſpecially in children that are more corpulent, by reaſon of the dirt which frets the skin, being gathered together in the wrinkles. Bathe the place, and then ſprinkle upon it either white *Nihili*, or anoint it with oyl of Litharge.

## *Of Leanneſs.*

THis ariſes either from a ſubtle kinde of Worms, which are generated in the moſt muſclely parts of the back, and arms, and conſume the body; They break forth ſometimes like to black haires; if you waſh thoſe parts with a Bath mixed with bread and hony, they are taken away either with a Razor, or with a cruſt of bread. Secondly, it ariſes from the ſmal quantity of milk, which is often-times remedied by changing the Nurſe.

Of

## *Of the difficulty which Children have to make water.*

IF the Diſeaſe proceed from ſharpneſs of the Urine, the Nurſe muſt uſe ſuch a way of dyet as is proper for the tempering and cooling of the blood; ſhe muſt be purged, & let blood, uſing afterwards cooling & refrigerating broths. If it proceed from any groſs humor ingendered in the bladder, the Nurſe muſt abſtain from all meats that do breed groſs humors, as milky meats, Peaſe and Beans, and ſuch like.

If the child be troubled with gravel, which may be perceived by the whiteneſs and rawneſs of the Urine, with a gravelly ſetling at the bottom, and the continual pain in making water: if the Child be any thing bigg, let a potion be given him of an ounce and half of ſweet Almonds, an ounce of Pellitory water, and two drams of the juice of Limons; uſe as much of this at a time as is convenient. Or take of this powder, of the blood of a Hare ſix ounces, of the root of Saxifrage one ounce, burn them in an earthen ot, & if the Infant ſuck give him a ſcruple of this powder in a little milk.

Of

## *Of the Inflammation of the Almonds of the Ears.*

IF the child be very ſmal, you muſt waſh the throat as neer the root of the tongue as may be with a linen cloth tied to a ſtick dipped in this gargariſme; take of new extracted *Caſſia* one dram, ſyrup of dry Roſes one dram and a half, with ſix ounces of the decoction of *Coriander*. Or you may anoint the neck with oyl of Violets, and Camomil, binding the neck with a little roller well anointed with the ſame; when the child goes to bed you may give him in a ſpoon a little ſyrup of dry'd Roſes, of *Pavot* and *Nenuphar* mingled together. *Oxyeroceum* alone doth alſo make an excellent Gargariſm.

If they come to a ſuppuration, you muſt uſe this gargariſme. Take of the decoction of Barley, Plantain, Agrimony, *Veronicæ*, Honyſuckle and herb *Rob* ſix ounces, in which diſſolve *mel Roſatum*, and Sugar-candie, of each half an ounce, to make a gargariſm.

## *Of Vomiting.*

IF it proceed from abundance of milk which the child ſucks, you muſt take care that the child ſuck leſs, and often.

*If* it come from any ill humor contained in the ſtomack, beſides that the Nurſe muſt keep a very

very good dyet, the Infant must be purged, with a smal expression of Rheubarb, giving it afterwards a little Codignac to comfort the stomack, mingling with it a little tablet of *Diarrhodium*, putting afterwards upon his stomack this plaister: Take of the pulp of condited Quinces two ounces, red Roses, Wormwood, and red Sanders, of each two drams, Oyl of Quinces as much as sufficeth; make a plaister of this, and lay it upon the stomack of the child.

## *Of the Hicquet.*

IF it come from an over-much repletion, it wil not be amiss to make him vomit of whatsoever age he be; or if it be necessary that a greater force should be used, you must try to make him vomit by putting down the throat a Fether dipt in oyl; if from the badness of the Nurses milk, she must be changed for a better; if from the coldness of the stomack, you must use remedies to comfort it, as little tablets of *Diarrhodium*, of which you must dissolve a scruple in the milk of the Nurse; you must also chafe the stomack of the child with oyl of Wormwood, Mastick, and Quinces.

## *Of the pain of the Belly in Children.*

IF the Disease come from indigestion, and moistness, the little Infant wil vomit, and be troubled with a flux of the belly, and the belly wil

wil be hard. In which caſes you may give the infant an ounce of ſweet Almonds drawn with out fire, and mingled with a quantity of Sugar-candy, or anoint the belly with this Ointment; Take oyl of Camomil, and oyl of ſweet Almonds, of each an ounce and a half, mingle them, and therewith anoint the belly; if wind be the cauſe, you may mingle a little oyl of rue in the foreſaid Ointment.

### *Of the Smal-Pox in Children.*

THe ſignes of this Diſeaſe are paine in the head, accompanied with a Fever, redneſs about the eyes, a dry Cough, and you ſhal mark in the skin up and down the body certain little ſpots, upon the face, back, breſt, and thighs; the Smal-pox is dangerous if they come forth with much pain, if they be greeniſh, blewiſh, or blackiſh.

For the cure of this, if the Infant ſuck, the Nurſe muſt keep a good order of dyet, ſhe may eat broth of Hens with Endive, Cichorie, Bugloſs and Borage boyled therein.

Now to make the Smal-Pox come forth the more quickly, if the Child be little, the Nurſe muſt drink this following Potion. Take of *Caricarum Pinguium* one ounce, peeled Lentils half an ounce, Gum Lacca two drams, Gum *Tragacant*, and Fenel-ſeed, of each two drams and a half; make of this a decoction in Fountain-water, and ſtrein it to the quantity of two pints,

pints, ſweeten this either with ſugar, or ſyrup of Maidenhair; let her drink of this in the morning a good glaſsful.

Or, you may give the child if it be able to take it, this Julep to be uſed very often: take of Cordial waters two ounces and a half, ſyrup of Limons one ounce, mingle it, and uſe it often; 4. or five hours after give him of powder of Unicorns-horn, and Bezoar. Now to keep this venemous humor from attaching the eyes, temper a little Saffron in a ſmal quantity of Plantain and Roſe-water, and rub the eyelids: or you may anoint them with Tutie: For keeping them from the noſe, take Roſe-water, and Betonie-water, of each an ounce, Vinegar half an ounce, juice of Pomgranates ſix ounces, in which ſteep two drams of *Santalum*, and two drams of the powder of Citron peel; adde to this ſix grains of Saffron, and make a medecine for the child to ſmel often to; the ſame Medecine wil ſerve for the ears, by ſtopping them with a little cotton.

To preſerve the mouth, and throat, and tongue, take this gargariſm; take whole Barley one handful, Plantain leaves, leaves of *Oxalis*, Arnogloſs, Agrimonie, and *Verbena*, of each one handful, boyl this to the quantity of ſix ounces, diſſolving in it ſyrup of dry Roſes, and Pomgranates, of each half an ounce, Saffron half a ſcruple.

To preſerve the Lungs, uſe ſyrup of *Jujubes*, Violets, and Nenuphar: when they are fully come

come out, to make them dye the more quickly, rub the face with oyl of ſweet Almonds drawn without fire. Or uſe this Ointment; take old Lard, cut it in ſmal pieces, and melt it in a pot, then ſtrein, then beat it, and mingle it with water for your uſe.

When the Pox is totally dead, take this Remedy to take away the marks. Take Halke the weight of two Crowns, clear cream 2. ounces, mix them together, and with a Fether dipt therein anoint the face of the child two or three daies; this cauſeth the skin to grow ſmooth, leaving not a pit in the face.

BRITISH MUSEUM

---

*Certain*

# Certain other Instructions grounded upon practical Observations, fit to be known by all Midwives, and Child-bearing Women, &c.

IN the yeare One Thousand six hundred and Ten, a young Lady whom I was wont to bring to bed, passing by my house came in to me, and told me that she was four moneths gone, and that she perceived the Infant to stir; about a moneth after she came to see me, and told me that she was in much pain, for that she had not perceived the Infant to stir in two dayes, and that therefore she believed that it was dead, by reason of a certain very great fright which she had had; for at the time that she was frighted she perceived the childe to move, but after that never, and her belly began by little and little to wax less, and about three weeks after she had that reflux of milk that Women use to have that lye in; when this was gone she had no grievance; yet seeing her often, and knowing her to be bigg with child, she asked me my advice, to know what she should do. Whereupon I asked her if any ill vapours rose up into her mouth? she told me

no. If ſhe had not loſt her appetite? ſhe anſwered that ſhe never had a better in her life; her heart was light, her body in good temper, ſo that there was nothing that troubled her but an apprehenſion ſhe had that the child was dead; whereupon *I* made her try all means to make the Infant ſtir; but ſhe notwithſtanding felt nothing, only ſhe perceived that ſomething did heave a little upon the operation of the Remedies, which was nothing but the Matrix, which, being now diſtempered and grown cold, did as it were anſwer the hot Remedies, teſtifying thereby ſome good which it received thereby: *I* adviſed her to be patient, and to wait Natures leiſure, which is provident enough of it ſelf, telling her that I had ſeen an Infant which had lain a long time in the Womb without budging, which for all that was not dead, although you could not perceive in the Woman any thing but the ſigns of a dead child. *I* had oftentimes brought the Lady to bed, and ſhe ſtil had very good deliveries, and very ſound children, of a good colour; ſo that I believing her to be of a ſound conſtitution, thought that if the Infant were dead, that Nature which was very ſtrong in her would expel it in time convenient, and that ſhe ſhould not be forced, not having given any teſtimony of defect; reſolving alſo when her Reckoning was out, if then Nature ſhewed it ſelf weak, that we would conſult her Friends, and Phyſitians. Many of her Friends told me that they doubted that ſhe

was

was deceived in thinking her ſelf to be with Child; to which *I* anſwered, that they might be confident that it was ſo; in brief, ſhe was brought to bed ſixteen weeks after the fright which ſhe had. Now here ariſeth a great doubt, whether the Child dyed at the hour of her being ſcared, by reaſon that it did not move in all the time. A reaſon that the child was not dead, may be becauſe that the Gentlewoman had not her milk til within three weeks afterward; and yet *I* cannot but think that it dyed at the ſame time; for certainly by that fright the vital ſpirits were raviſhed from it, and the blood of the Arteries retired to the heart of the Mother, not being diſtributed to the Infant, but at the good pleaſure of Nature; the courſe of which being ſtopped, it retired to its firſt ſource, through which the child ſuffering a ſuffocation, gave a violent motion; and now after the Fright was come to her ſelf, and that Nature would have returned to finiſh her work, ſhe was not received, becauſe the vital faculties of the Infant were extinct; and notwithſtanding all this the Mother not ceaſing to retain the menſtrual blood as ſhe was accuſtomed, that finding it ſelf ſtopped, and ſtil increaſing without that uſe made of it that was wont, it made a reflux to the breaſts, which flowd down again in five or ſix dayes; for the Infant coming to decreaſe in the Womb, now way was made for them, which came not down for all that but in the Delivery and after, which was in this

manner: At the end of the ſixteenth week after the fright, ſhe had pains in the night; ſhe thinking to indure them wel enough til morning, in the morning cauſed me to be ſent for. *I* came to her finding with her a Phyſitian, and ſundry others of her acquaintance. The Phyſitian that expected me had ordered her a Clyſter to give her, if *I* thought it to the purpoſe; *I* found her pale, cold, and yet in a ſweat, with ſo little pulſe that *I* eſteemed her dead; *I* touched her, & found ſhe had been in Travail, which had been too long neglected; *I* called preſently for a plain ſilver diſh, into which *I* ſqueez'd the juice of half a Citron, and ſet it upon a Chafing-diſh of coals; being warmed, *I* cauſed her to take it, this reſtored Nature a little, and ſtirred up her pains, and then *I* aſſiſted her; notwithſtanding ſome of the waters ran down: after her firſt throw the leggs and thighs of the Child came forth · now finding the Infant to be dead, and ſeeing that ſhe was troubled with no more throws, *I* was afraid of drawing it forth, for fear it might be rotten: *I* did give her a Clyſter without moving her, the force of which bringing the Child away, ſhe was delivered of a dead Infant all over of a leaden colour, without any ill vapour; the Secundines ſound and fair as you ſhal ſee, her purgations as clear as could be, and ſhe had as good and as happy a Lying in as any Woman in the world; all which time ſhe had not the appearance of any Milk at all. Hence we may admire

the

the effects of Nature which are wonderful. But in such cases Women must be sure in due time and place; for if a Woman do resist her paines, and doth not put her self in a right posture, she runs a great hazard of her life.

### *A Second Observation of a Woman that had been in Travail nine dayes.*

BEing called to the Labour of a Woman that had been in Travail nine or ten dayes, of whom there was little hope, *I* went, and there found the Woman almost dead, her eyes open and fixed, her nose shrunk in, her breath smelling like a charnel-house; and she took nothing down into her stomack that she did not instantly vomit up again; she had drunk up above two pints of water in an hour, and by her bed there was a whole sea of those things that she had vomited up. They gave her cold water, and the yelk of an Egg sometimes, though it came up again at the same instant; she felt no paine of the Infant; but finding her Womb was open, and her waters beginning to come down, *I* found that she had been in Travail, only Nature was oppressed, and had not had any good assistance, so that the Infant was retired back again which stifled the Mother, and provoked her vomiting; upon which *I* gave my advice, and though *I* thought my self come a little too late, yet *I* resolved to do what lay in the power of my Art; and therefore *I* resolved to give

her a good ſtrong Clyſter to awaken Nature, and to bring the Infant lower, which it did according to our hopes; afterwards to drink a ſmal quantity of Rhubarb-water which ſtayed with her; a little after *I* gave her the yelk of an Egg which ſtayed with her alſo, cauſing her to drink nothing but Rhubarb-water; and at every hours end *I* gave her the yelk of an *Egg*, which did alſo ſtay with her; by this time Nature began to ſtrengthen it ſelf, and the paines of the Infant came again; and in leſs then two hours after the Clyſter, and other nouriſhment given, when *I* ſaw her pretty wel, and that Nature ſtrove to expel the Infant, *I* gave her half a dram of Confection of Alkermes in a little Wine; and a little while after *I* cauſed her to take another Clyſter, into which *I* put a little *Hiera*, and a little *Benedictus*, which finiſhed the work; for She was then delivered of a very luſty child, which lived about two dayes: *I* came thither about noon, and ſhe was brought to bed before 9. at night. *I* wrote this thus particularly, to let you know that oft-times for want of knowing where the miſchief lies, the Remedies are miſ-applyed; and indeed a Woman Travayling in the ninth moneth ought chiefly to be ſuccored with Clyſters.

Of

## *Of a Woman here in Town that bare her Childe eleven Moneths, and could not be Delivered.*

BEing called to a Woman in this Town that thought her self three moneths and a half gone, which is one of the Termes of time wherein commonly the Moles and false births are delivered, having then some loss of blood and paine, *I* was sent for, and judged it to have been some imperfect Conception, and therefore *I* used all the meanes that art imposeth to assist her, yet could she not expel it for all these long paines: whereupon finding some strange apprehensions in her *I* wondered; for in all the time of my practice *I* never knew such a thing as that dangerous in my life. But *I* afterwards found this apprehension to come from a certain accident that had hapned to a Sister of hers, who being with child carried it very wel to the end of the ninth moneth, at the end of which she began to be in paine, as if she would have cryed out; the paines were great and long, which they were not at all astonished at by reason that it was her first childe; yet were not these paines accompanied with any signes of Labour, as the opening the exterior orifice of the Womb; and they continued thus for the space of two dayes and two nights; many Medecines were used to facilitate the birth, but to no purpose; and now she felt not the child stir

any more. And now it was concluded that she had mistaken her time; and now being at rest for four or five dayes, and growing weary of the City she went into the Country, and being returned without taking notice that she had received any harm, she was taken with the same paines as before, which continued a day and a night, and then ceased as before; this was adjudged to be certain paines of the colick: after this she endured one moneth longer in her former estate, which was now the eleventh moneth compleat; at the end of which she felt some little pain like throws, which presently affected her heart, upon which she was laid upon her bed, and they brought her Wine; but at the very instant she dyed, without having any time to cal for assistance: seeing her dead, they perceived upon the right side of her belly a very black mark about the breadth of a dollar; being opened they found the child all putrified. Hence we must observe that in Women that are bigg with child, who have frequent pain, and nothing coming forth, the Matrix that should open rather shutting it self closer, whether it be at the time or no, you must imagine these to be clysters that expel wind, which are to be reiterated as occasion requires; which rule if it had been observed in this Woman, she nor the Fruit of her Womb had not perished in that manner.

## *Of the common opinion, that a Woman seven moneths gone ought to walk very much; and of the accidents that happen thereby.*

IT is a common error among Midwives vvhich is not to be passed by, that a Woman vvith child vvhen she hath gone seven months of her time, is to vvalk much; upon a conceit that exercise is very proper for her; for that they say doth loosen the child from the reins, and facilitates the birth; *I* confess as to facilitating of the birth it may something avail; only *I* must add this also, that it is better to dravv avvay the child then to break it; and moreover it is better to be something longer in Travail then to incur 2. or 3. evils vvhich ordinarily happen; the first is, that the Child in the end of the eleventh moneth doth make certain indeavours to free it self from the belly of the Mother; and vvithout doubt his first indeavour is to turn himself in the belly of the Mother; for the Infant turns himself a good vvhile before the time of *L*abour; and therefore *I* say exercise is very dangerous: the first reason is, because by pushing dovvnvvard the belly is dilated, and especially in such as carry their children lovv; and besides, oft-times the head drags dovvn all the body of the Womb, and loosens the ligaments in such a sort, that after Delivery it can hardly be put into its place again. Besides the

the children having their heads between the bones of the Mother, by much walking of the Mother they come to be bruiſed, ſo that the Infants do many times dye, and no man is able to give a cauſe why; for the branches of veins which are for the nouriſhment of the brain open in an inſtant, letting out the blood which is contained in them; and when the corruption is ingendred, there follows immediatly Fevers, and corruption of the Infant: At other times Women coming to ſit upon a hard ſeat do bruiſe the head of the Infant, which cauſes like accidents; and in all theſe accidents none but the Midwife is to blame, unleſs the belly it ſelf be ſpoiled. This they ſay is the fault of the Nurſe who did not apply Remedies fit to reſtore the fault. *I* muſt confeſs that Remedies do much avail to the recovery of the fore-ſaid malady, and do much avail to the healing of that diſeaſe, & marring of the belly; but to reſtore it to ſuch an eſtate as it was in before, *I* ſay it is a thing impoſſible for Medecines to perform; for the skin which is once ſeparated cannot be cloſed again without a ſcar; *I* would now not only blame thoſe that aſſiſt them, but by putting the actions of people before them, ſhew them where lies the fault, and what reaſon *I* have ſo to do: *I* muſt confeſſe that falſe accuſations have made the moſt able Midwives timorous, for they lye liable to ſo many cauſes of detraction, that all that are either but indifferent good, or elſe not good, are all

all accuſed alike, if any thing fall out amiſs with the Patient, as if they were the abſolute cauſes of the evil, or that it lay abſolutely in their power to hinder it: it happens alſo many times that a Midwife worthy of that name doth deliver a Woman from death, and yet in the place of much praiſe ſhe incurs many times much blame; ſo that they are oftentimes conſtrained (to avoid the ſcandal) to advertiſe the of their ill procedures, and to give place to thoſe that know not how to do things with that ſweetneſs and judgement. The fault is no where but in the ignorance, ſcandal, and ingratitude of Women toward thoſe of this Calling. Beſides, there are a company of young Women that becauſe they have had one child, do give themſelves a great deal of liberty to talk of theſe things. Cries one, *I* like not theſe Midwives that handle me; *I* wil change mine cries another for that trick alſo; ſo that many out of a kind of fear have a greater deſire and wil to be complacent then to do wel; and ſo fitting with their hands before them entertaine their Patients with diſcourſe, who for all that feeling their paines, are conſtrained to thruſt forward, upon which the head of the Infant coming firſt, for the moſt part the womb ſerves for a *Head-band*, which comes forth before it: whereas might the Midwife be permitted to touch the Patient, they might put back the womb, and prevent many accidents that happen in lyings in, which happens ſometimes to be

be a total relaxation of the Matrix; of which when the Women complain to their complacent and flattering Midwives, They reply, why Miſtreſs you know *I* did not touch; and beſides *I* am not in fault if you have been touched; this is the fruit of their reproaches: You will ſay there are abundance of Country Women that the Midwife never toucheth at all, and they do not know ſcarcely whether a Woman lye in or no, unleſs they ſee the Infant appear; but they are not free from the diſeaſe whereof *I* ſpeak; for I have ſeen ſo great a company of them that *I* have been afraid to behold them. This comes ſay the Midwives becauſe they touched them not, and that it is occaſioned either becauſe the Infant is too bigg; or they ſay it is a burſtneſs, or the coming down of the great gut; the moſt ſubtile put up a clew of thread, the others a ball of wax, which eaſeth a little while, but comes out again every hour.

## *Of a Childe which they thought ſick of the Epilepſie, occaſioned by the ſickneſs of the Mother, and of the cauſe.*

ONe day there came to me a Gentlewoman to deſire me that *I* would give her ſomething for her Daughter that was ſick of the Mother: when her Mother related what ſhe ailed,

*I*

I desired to see her, I saw her, and she had in one hour two several fits, which was an affrightment, attended with very much yawning, after which she remained in a very great weakness; all which time the mouth of the child was drawn more to one side then the other; the eyes when she was out of the fit were open and fixed in one place; I inquired of the Mother, at what age her Daughter came to be first troubled with it; who answered, that she had been in this Town for something more then a year, and that before that time she was never troubled with any such thing: I gave her the best counsel that I could; and first of all bid her to carry her again to the place where she was first nursed, using some few Remedies that were convenient; which prospered so wel, that after she came thither she had but one fit, though she had them so frequently before. Of this no other cause can be given, but that the place where she lived for that year being thicker then that where she was nursed caused in her a stirring of the humors, with which the mother was continually afflicted, she being disposed naturally to that kind of disease.

Of

## *Of a young Woman who being ſtruck upon the belly by her Husband with his foot, was in great pain, and could not be brought to bed without the help of a Chirurgeon.*

I Will here relate a thing which *I* have ſeen in a young Woman, that if the like accident ſhould happen, the ſame Remedies may be applyed. There came a Woman to me to declare to me a diſeaſe with which ſhe was troubled, deſiring me to do my utmoſt, for that hitherto ſhe could not lye in without the help of a Chirurgeon, who had already killed two of her children. *I* knowing what an ill Husband ſhe had, and that he had given her a blow upon the belly with his foot, and had broken the *Peritonæum*, which was the reaſon that part of her guts hung down upon the ſhare-bone like the bagg of a bagpipe; to which place being bigg the Womb jutted out, ſo that when the time came, the Infant had not liberty to turn it ſelf; ſo that the Midwife ſeeing ſhe could not have the child without loſing the Woman, was feign to make uſe of the Chirurgeon. *I* conſidered her diſeaſe, and ordered her to carry a ſwathe-band, ſuch a one as VVomen with child carry to ſupport their bellies, onely made a little more hollow; and *I* cauſed her to wear it as they that are burſt do wear half ſlopps, lying ſmooth with cuſhionets within, and never to riſe

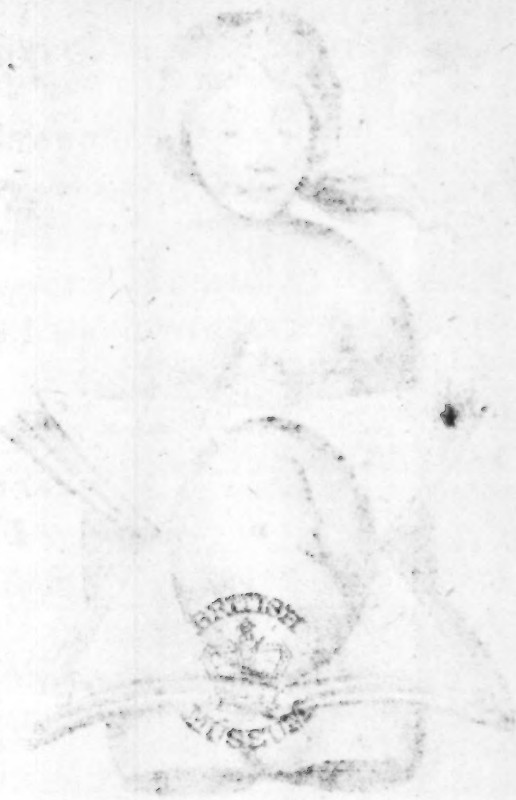

BRITISH
MUSEUM

fig: 3.

p: 72

p: 108

fig 4

## Explanation of the third figure.

*THis figure contains the birth at full, maturity, ready to come forth in the truest posture.*

AAAA, *the parts of the midriff dissected.*

BBBB, *the body of the womb dissected into four parts.*

CCCC, *the Membranes or Filmes, called Chorion and the Amnios, dissected likewise into four parts.*

D, *the Birth in its naturall posture.*

## Explanation of the fourth Figure.

This Figure contains the Navel vessels, and the films or covering of the infant.

AAAA, *the muscles of the midriff the peritoneum, and the skin it self dissected into four parts.*

B, *the Liver of the Infant.*

C, *the urinary vessels.*

D, *the hole of the Liver into which the Navel veine doth passe.*

E, *the Umbilical or Navel vein it self.*

FF, *the two Navel arteries tending downwards to the small gut arteries.*

G, *the passage for the urine proceeding from the bottom of the bladder.*

H, *the*

H, *the umbilicall veſſels taken out of the body of the Infant to ſhew how they are joyned together.*

I, *the membrane that involves the Navel veſſels.*

K K K K, *the guts or intrales of the Infant.*

L L L, *the Navel veſſels extended from the children to the birth.*

M, *the place where the branches of the Navel veſſels are firſt collected into one Trunk.*

N N, *A branch of the Navel veſſels ſcatterd through the fleſhy part of the Chorion.*

O O O, *A branch of the Navell arteries.*

P P P P, *the conjunction of the umbilicall veine and artery.*

Q Q Q Q. *the extremities of the Navel veins and Arteries, ending the fleſhy parts of the Chorion.*

R R R R, *the membraine called the Chorion.*

BRITISH MUSEUM

rise without this whether bigg or no; which she did, and stil does, and bears as fine children, and lies in as wel as any other woman.

## *Of two Deliveries of one Woman.*

THere was a Woman who being come to a sufficient age became big: she causeth two of the best Midwives of the Countrey to assist her in her *Lying in*; the hour being come, they did as art commanded them, which was, the Child coming wel into the vvorld, to keep her in a good situation, to cause her to eat things vvhich vvere only to the purpose, to keep her moderately vvarm, & then to bring her pains to a good issue. *I* excuse the passion and impatience of Friends, but *I* vvould not do any thing against my duty for complacency; a fault that is soon committed, but not so easily repented of; This Woman vvas pretty long, as most Women are of their first Children, in vvhich time her Husband altogether impatient, & seeing her to doubt the report of the *Midvvives*, therefore said he, here is a Chirurgeon hard by, vvho may be sent for to resolve the doubt of the *Midvvives*; he sent for him just about the hour that the Woman vvas to be brought to bed: The Chirurgeon vvhen he came savv that the child vvas ready to come forth: The *Midvvives* vvho had given vvay to the Chirurgeon, thinking to take their place again as soon

ſoon as he had touched her, to make his report, were deceived; for he ſeeing the buſineſs ready to be done, told her Husband that it was neceſſary for him to operate, but that he would proceed with ſo much induſtry that he would not only bring forth a ſound & a luſty child, but moreover that he would render his Wife alſo in a ſafe condition. The Midwives when they would have ſpoken were put to ſilence. The Gentlewoman vvas preſently delivered, and he ſtayed but a litle while to receive: thus the Midwives that had attended long, and all the while of the Travail were deſpiſed, and put off, and the Chirurgeon extolled and praiſed, and wel rewarded, with ſeveral moſt obliging and curteous invitations. About a year after he was entertained upon the former ſcore like a Prince; the hour of her *Labour* came again, and the *Gentleman* was gone to viſit ſome of his friends, having ſuch a confidence in the Chirurgeon, that he ſet his minde at reſt for any danger. The labour of this child was not like the labour of the other child; for it came with the feet foremoſt; and when the whole body was come forth, the head could not be got forth: he had brought with him no inſtruments, thinking that this Delivery would have been like the other; but ſeeing himſelf at a ſtand, he ſent to a Chirurgeon not far off for an inſtrument: in the mean time he ſent into the kitchen for the ladle, with the hook at the end thereof, to draw forth the child; he drew ſo

wel

wel, that he drew away the life of the childe, and without seeking any further for any body to saddle his horse, or bidding any body fare-wel, he fled his ways. This may be an instruction to those that are so ready to entertaine Mountebanks, and Empericks; then vvhom there are no men more prodigal of the life of another for money.

*Of a Woman that because she would not be ruled in her Lying in, dyed.*

I Was one day called to the Labour of a Woman vvhich had good Deliveries of her Sons, and Daughters, at their due time, although her deliveries of Boyes vvere alwaies more difficult then those of her Daughters; being come to her *I* found her vvalking in the Chamber with her leggs bare in a season that was not over-hot. *I* caused her to be put into her bed to vvarm her again, but she vvould by no means indure it; although *I* prayed her, she vvas angry with me, and told me this vvas not the rule, to be constrained; the Mistris and the Nurse combined against me, the night approached; the waters being come dovvn I feared the ill success of this business, that her disease vvould be irrecoverable by reason of her self-vvilness: *I* desired her Husband to use his endeavour, but he could do no more vvith her then *I*: about midnight *I* prayed her to go to bed again, and to vvarm her self, and unless she could do so *I*

could do nothing: she told me *I* understood nothing in respect of a certain Surgeon, who when she had such a kinde of Labour before, only toucht her with his finger, and delivered her, & that she would have him: *I* was content, & so she sent for him; he came very confidently, but his work vvas not at so easie a pass as formerly: he put a good large Table Napkin before him, trussing it up to his elbows, saying he was as able to deliver her as before; she would no more see me after his arrival: the Chirurgeon to whom *I* represented (after his arrival) all that *I* had understood and seen, and the fear which *I* had of her, told me that all would be well. At day break a neighbour of mine calling me away, *I* desired her Husband to let me go; but he vvas unvvilling, unless *I* vvould promise to come again, vvhich *I* did; and as soon as the door vvas open, one of the servants told me another Midvvife vvas sent for; her Husband desired me again, that since the Chirurgeon failed of his skil, *I* would use my skil; but it was too late, for the Chirurgeon left them, and the Woman dyed. See here hovv ill a thing it is to be opinionated, for *I* could easily have delivered her if she vvould have been ruled by me.

Of

*Of certain Women that bear Children and lye in before their time, and others at their full time, who grow bigg, and ful of humors, which causeth the death of the child presently after their Delivery, their children being nourished in their Bellies like fish, only with water.*

I Knew a Gentlewoman who had lain in three times, but yet none of her children lived: I desired her to take a Physitian that might give advice both to her and me, and to ordain her some remedies, and a government of dyet to keep her from suffering the like accidents for time to come: we chose a Physitian, who prescribed certain Tablets or Trochisques to take from the time she began to grow bigg, until the time of her Delivery, twice a week; as also to take the water of Indian Bul-rush, and of Sarsaparilla, to mix in her drink, or broth, as often as she would, having a due regard to the heat of her blood: she observed every tittle of his directions, which made her to bear a Son alive sound and healthful; she continued these Remedies four years together; but the next time she grew big with childe she thought that Nature of it self would be sufficient: I counseled her to the contrary, but she he arkned not; so that when her Time came, she was brought to bed of a dead child. I shal give you the Receit of the Tablets, and of the Water, for th e benefit of Women that are subject to an ill Delivery

by reaſon of the great quantity of waters, which hindreth the child from turning in the womb: the water is made in this manner. *R.* Two pints or 2 pints and a half of water, put therein half an ounce of the root of Indian Bulruſh, and an ounce of Sarſaparilla; put this in the drink, and let it infuſe one night; mix it with the drink, or elſe drink it pure. The Tablets are made of this faſhion. *R. Mace*, Saunders, Rhubarb, Pearl, and Coral, *Sene*, of each 25 grains, with one ounce and half of ſugar; let every Tablet weigh 6 drams.

## *The obſervation of a VVoman who was thought unable to bear any more Children, yet contrary to expectation was delivered of one, and the reaſon thereof.*

THere are certain Women who have the neck of the Womb long and hardned, by a cold humor that fals down thereon, and renders them uncapable of conceiving. One I have heard of who was afflicted with this diſeaſe, and voided a great great deal of putrified blood, by a certain fumigatiõ that *I* taught her was cured. *I* can ſay this of a certainty, that after this Woman had voided this putrefaction ſhe came to ſee me with a very luſty child, and was bigg of another; for being diſcharged of the burden of putrified blood, ſhe found her ſelf marveloully free for conception; for the ma-

Matrix that began to be ulcerated was now fortified, and strengthened again, and the natural heat began to take possession there again.

*A good Observation in the choice of Nurses.*

THere be two sorts of Nurses which *I* have found; the one is of such Women as are of an ill humor, or juice; which humors settle all in the milk, for that is the place where these fluxes discharge themselves; these Women are in a better condition being Nurses, then when they are not Nurses; and being not Nurses are subject to pains sometimes in the arms, and sometimes in the shoulders, sometimes in one of their leggs, or Thighs; or else they are subject to the watring of the eyes, or swelling in the corner of the eye or nose: these are good Nurses as long as children are fat; but the fat is soft, and the Infants dul & sottish, giving no great signs of vivacity; coming to bear teeth are very sickly, and do ordinarily dye, by reason of the flux, that pusheth out too great company of teeth at once. The children that escape this are more il juic'd in their infancy, then are their Fathers and Mothers in their old age. If the flux that afflicts them be salt, the milk is of a blackish and blewish colour; if it be of choler, it is more dangerous then the other, for that is very dangerous and venemous to the children. There is another sort of Nurses more dangerous then these *I* have now spoken

of, who presently after they have lain in, that is, three or four, or five, or six moneths, are taken with their purgations, a thing which never happens to good Nurses: for this is the course of Nature, that all the blood which is retained is dedicated to the nourishment of the Infants. This is caused by an immoderate heat which is in their blood; and to say truth, as soon as ever this happens, the Infant must be taken away, for they are more apt to conceive then to nurse, and if they continue Nurses, they do but ruine the children: this is too much experimented, and I speak this to save the lives of a great many children, when seeing them suck I have discovered their want of milk; so that I may say, there dies a third part of the children, for want of taking care in this particular, which seem fat and in good case.

This is the cause of great cholicks, and vvindinesses in children, vvhich kils them in a moment; for the least Fever that takes them carries them avvay. Besi le this, there are some whose milk is so little, but vvithall so thick, that it sticks upon the tongue, palate, and throat, which causes as it were a vvhite canker, vvhich is more and more heated by reason of their forcible drawing in vain, & possesseth all the throat, vvhereby they are hindred frō sucking. These Nurses wil milk after this a drop or two out of their breasts, crying look ye the child cares not for sucking. I never knew more abuse in any thing then in Nurses; for let them

make

make vvhat excuſe they vvill, it is nothing but neceſſity that reduceth them to be ſuch, although the greateſt part do ſay that it is to get acquaintance: yet vvhen they have a childe, vvhether they have milk or no, yet they deſire not to part vvith it, no more then they do to drown themſelves; vvhereby the Parents are often deceived. And therefore the mothers ought to have a great care, and to make it their buſineſs to ſurprize the Nurſes at their ovvn houſes, that if there be any miſcarriage, they may find it out. And indeed it is very reaſonable that the cauſe of theſe poor creatures that cannot complain ſhould not be neglected, and theſe ſhe-murderers be made known, that they may not go unknown.

*Of a VVoman which I laid two ſeveral times, and of the difference of her bearing of two children, proceeding from ſeveral cauſes.*

I VVas called to lay a Woman, who ſaid ſhe was gone her ful time; ſhe had the ſame pains that Women are wont to have in the time of Travail, but her waters came not down; at one forcible throw ſhe caſt forth a great membrane like a hoggs bladder, all united within and without, only that it had divers branches of veins, as you ſhal ſee in a bladder; which I preſently cut, and found therein a little Infant well-ſhaped ſwimming in black waters: it had gone its ful time, and was ſo lean that it reſem-

bled a meer picture; it had the Navel-ſtring holding faſt to the bladder, where it is to be ſuppoſed thoſe ſmal branches of the veins do end; here as I gueſs, as long as it found any bloud, it lay languiſhing; but that beginning to fail it dyed, and preſently voided thoſe excrements that were contained in the Inteſtines, which being mingled in the waters made them black: and as for the Woman her ſelf, ſhe was the fulleſt of humor that ever I ſaw in my life. Another time *I* brought the ſame VVoman to bed, who was delivered of a child that came the ordinary way into the world with the head formoſt; now *I* perceiving her in Labour, found nothing at firſt but a certain ſoftneſs, as if the waters were coming down; afterwards I perceived a certain bag with hair, athwart which I ſaw certain great knobs or heads; the Infant being come forth was not yet formed; the face and the head were like vizards more then any face; it had the form of a noſe, but it was ſoft like wool: the head was ful of water, and thoſe knobs which appeared were nothing but the futures of the head, which the too great abundance of water had disjoynd: in the hands it had nothing but hair in ſtead of bones, and the toes were of the ſame; the VVoman her ſelf was ſaid to be extreamly cholerick, and moiſt.

*In-*

*Instructions of a famous, and dying Midwife to her Daughter, touching the practice of this Art.*

DAughter, if the excellencies of what is to be known in this world are to be found not in one, but in several Countries, certainly they are most able to instruct who have had the greatest experience, and longest travel in the world; which is the reason, that in this small Treatise I have not tyed my self up to the rules solely of my own Nation, but have searched the studies also of other Nations, that thou mayest be bettered not only by my experience, but by the labour of others.

In the first place therefore *I* exhort thee to be diligent, and to leave nothing unsearched that may tend to the advantage of thy practice. And to this end be alwaies learning to the last day of your life; which that thou mayst not cease to do, be alwayes humble; for those that are proud and obstinate never gain upon the hearts of those that are knowing in secrets. Be sure thou never make trial of any new Remedy or Receit, either upon poor or rich, if thou be'st not assured of the quality and operation thereof; and that it can do no hurt, whether it be applyed outwardly, or taken inwardly. Hide none of those good Receits which thou knoweſt, either from *Midwives*, or Physitians; for otherwise they wil esteem them as little as those of *Mountebanks*, as if thou hadst but one cure like

like them for all Diſeaſes, and yet didſt bragg as they do of doing wonders, yet ſtil conceal their Receits. Thou muſt ſpeak freely of that which thou knoweſt, and give a reaſon for what thou ſayeſt. Be not negligent, but ſo increaſe thy Talent, that people may ſay you are better then ever your Mother was: *I* muſt tell thee, thou haſt taken a matter of great importance into your hand, and that in this Art there are two wayes eaſie to take; the one, to ſave thy credit, and the other to loſe it. Above all things, you muſt beware (for any treaſure in the world) of adhering to one vice, ſuch as they are guilty of who give Remedies to cauſe abortion: for thoſe that do ill, and thoſe that ſeek a damnable remedy, are wicked in a high degree. But it is a higher degree of wickedneſs for thoſe that are no way ingaged in the buſineſs, for lucres ſake to kil both the body and ſoul of an infant. This *I* do not ſpeak, that thou ſhouldeſt refuſe to give Remedies upon juſt occaſions; but to take heed how you be cheated by ſubtile perſons who ſhal tel you fine ſtories of the diſeaſes of their Wives or Daughters, which they may ſay are very honeſt, hoping from you ſome Receits to effect their wicked deſignes: ſend them to the Phyſitians, for you may give them a lawful excuſe in ſaying that ſuch matters do not belong to your charge. Never keep the cawl called *Amnios*, which covers the head & ſhoulders of the childe, for Sorcerers to make uſe of.

If

If you are ſent for to any houſe, inform your ſelf of what condition they are; and whether they be rich, or whether they be the poorest creatures in the world, ſerve them with like pains and affection; and if you finde them to be very poor, take nothing; for to them a little is a great deal: viſit them alſo afterwards with diligence, that for the ſmal time wherein they keep their bed you may be aſſiſting to them, in ſtrengthning and recovering of their healths. *I* charge thee Daughter, that in all thy life thou never receive a Woman into thy houſe to lye in; for that is but a kind of Panderiſm clothed in ſome pretence of charity; neither doth thy profeſſion oblige thee to do it; if it chance to be a Woman that is not wholly betaken to whoredom, that there is ſome hopes of recovering her from that loſt condition, if then ſhe deſire you, out of a belief of your ſufficiency or ſecrecy, you may then go to her in an honeſt place. You muſt comfort her if ſhe be afflicted, and to put her in the right way, exhorting her never to commit the like again; but to receive ſuch perſons into your houſe is but a means to encourage evil, as the receivers of ſtollen goods are a means to encourage thieves; And ſo the Midwives that bring ſuch a ſtench to their houſe do aſſiſt & abet the evil which they do, whileſt they know where to diſcharge themſelves of the like burthen again. At the firſt when *I* took upon me this Calling, I took two into my houſe, the one of quality, the other of an ordinary condition; *I* ſaw them

ſometimes in ſuch fits of deſpair, that I could hardly bring them out of them again; Thoſe from whom the evil came, upon whoſe account *I* had received them, came now and then to ſee them, becauſe they brought them maintenance; *I* was continually faign to keep watch with them, for fear they ſhould do any evil in the houſe: And *I* muſt needs ſay *I* had better have kept a herd of ſwine. Such unreſts as theſe ought not to enter into the breſt of a Midwife; for her minde ought to be free & at peace. Beſide, that a cuſtome of laying VVomen of an ill life ſpoils the reputation of a VVoman, and oft-times endangers the health alſo. To confirm which, *I* knew an honeſt underſtanding Midwife that laid a Courtezan that ſeemed to ayle nothing at all; but ſhe having an inveterated Pox, ſhe gave it to the old Midwife upon her right hand, upon which there came a red *Bubo*; for all which ſhe being unwilling to leave off her Calling, ſhe ſpoiled after that above thirty Houſholds; for the Husbands got the Pox from their wives, and the children from their Mothers.

Now let me tel thee Daughter, that thou oughteſt not to take it ill to ſee the condition of Midwives deſpiſed; neither let this hinder thy ſtudies in the perfection of this Art, which are not to be comprehended by thoſe that deſpiſe it: neither be diſmayed if thou ſeeſt people in this condition, that do not deſerve to be; for this doth not at all diminiſh the honour

of

of those that are good: for it comes from hence to pass, becaus they that receive them for mony do as stablers do, put the good and bad horses together; the good horses are in no danger to be hurt by the Jades, but the Jades are in hazard of being kickt and spoild by the good Horses.

Never think of any thing else but of doing wel, & serving those that shal call thee according to their own liking, if that which they desire be not prejudicial to them; but if that which they desire be to their hurt, be sure that thou discharge thy self of them, and especially excuse thy self to the assistants, that thou mayst perswade them to reason. A sweet disposition in a Midwife is much more commendable then a rigorous; the pain of Child-bearing is a very hard labour, which you must consider, and accordingly conform thy self to the humor of the Patient, knowing your self to be called to comfort and assist her.

Mark wel entring into a house in what condition the Patient is; if the evil be at hand you must incourage her, and prepare your self with those things that are necessary; and first you must see that the bed be wel made for the woman that is to be brought to bed, and then to put on her little smock, and wastcote, and other linen necessary; and if she be so opinionated as that she wil not, tel her how much you do it for the better; and how great a paine it

will

will be afterwards; content her though, *for you must make of a bad market no more then you can.* You ought to give order for things to be had from the Apothecaries with her consent; or if she be young, with the consent of her friends. You must take order also that some good broth be made for her to take in the time of her Travail, if it should chance to be long; and also two hours after her being brought to bed. Above all things *I* charge thee, that what ever business thou maist have there, that thou go not about them too hastily. For there is nothing so nauseous to be seen, as the improvident actions of over-busie Women. Never be dismayd if every thing go not wel, for fear disorders the senses; and a person that keeps her wits together, without suffering them to be scattered by fear, is capable of giving assistance in weighty affairs; and especially where things are done with leisure; for in such cases Nature helps marvelously, when we are most at a stand. There is a great necessity of prudence, especially in the Age wherein we live. There is now no need of *Coloquintida* to render any thing, good in it self, bitter and disagreeable to the taste. There are few Women now a dayes that do give that respect, or have that kindness for them as in former ages; for then when their Midwife dyed, they shewed a great deale of sorrow, and prayed God that now they might have

have no more Children: which though it were not well done, yet it shewed their affection. Now a dayes Women use them as meer Hirelings. There is a great deal of artifice to be used in the pleasing of our Women, especially the young ones, who many times do make election of men to bring them to bed. I blush to speak of them, for *I* take it to be a great piece of impudence to have any recourse to them, unless it be in a case of very great danger. *I* do approve it, I have approved it, and know that it ought to be done, so that it be concealed from the Woman all her life long; nor that she see the Chirurgeon any more: for it is very inconvenient to Husbands, that (unless in cases of very great danger) such th ngs concerning their own Wives should be communicated to any other men but themselves.

To this purpose shal I tel thee Daughter, that being called to the Labour of a friend where were none but two or three of her acquaintance, they asked me what I thought of the labour: to which I answered, that the child did not come wel, but that I would do the work with the assistance of God without danger to the child, or to the Mother; they desired me that I would let a Chirurgeon see her; for their satisfaction I consented to it, provided that she might not see him; for I was fearful lest she should dye with apprehension and shame; I perswaded her to slide down toward the feet of the bed: I put the bolster upon the middle of the bed, and darkned the room on that side where he was to come; at the feet he touched her, and she was brought to bed without any other assistance save that of God

and

and Nature. Since these injuries have been put in fashion, there have been observed greater hazards and dangers in lying in then before, which might be remedied by persons capable of their profession, if they might be let alone. But this detraction is so much in request, that among some kinde of people there is much adoe to make them believe the truth, and especially where they cannot get great advantage by so doing; and truly Honorable persons which I have had the honour to serve make other Women seem monstrous to me. You shall come into some houses where there are certain persons that hold such false lights to the Mistris of the house, that she sees quite contrary to that which is real; which persons if they are not humored, your busines will be there soon dispatched. Take great heed of coming there, for it may chance to gain you nothing but a great deal of care. There are some Women that have no children, at which they are very much troubled; which is so notwithstanding that they might easily be helped, if they would tel an understanding Midwife where the defect lay.

As concerning those who are sent for to lay Women in the Country, I must say this, that as for those that are not very wel experimented they may incurr many hazards by reason of their ignorance, and the multiplicity of accidents that may happen; and for those that are knowing, to leave their Patients in the City is a thing that may displease and wrong many, and run the hazard of being no more entertained among them, to their own ruine; neither is there any certainty of a Woman that will run rambling into the Country. My last advice is, that thou do wel, and in so doing fear nothing but God, that he may bless thee, and thy endeavours.

*FINIS.*

*Newly Published, that Excellent and practical peece Intituled,*
*Adam in Eden, or the knowledge of all our English*
*Plants, with their Vertues, physically applyed to the body*
*of Man, that every man may be his own Physitian, in*
*English, by W. C. M. D. and others.*